



Department of
Building and Housing
Te Tari Kaupapa Whare

Dear Customer

Please find enclosed Amendment 12, effective 10 October 2011, to the New Zealand Building Code Handbook.

Section	Old Handbook	October 2011 Amendments to Handbook
Title pages	Remove title pages and document history	Replace with new title pages and document history
Preface	Remove pages 5/6, 7/8	Replace with new pages 5/6, 7/8
References	Remove pages 79-104B	Replace with new pages 79-104B
Definitions	Remove pages 107-110, 113-116, 119-122, 127/128, 135-140, 143-148, 148C-148F	Replace with new pages 107-110, 113-116, 119-122, 127/128, 135-140, 143-148, 148C-148F
Index	Remove pages 149-208	Replace with new pages 149-208

New Zealand Building Code Handbook Third Edition

Prepared by the Department of Building and Housing

This Compliance Document is prepared by the Department of Building and Housing. The Department of Building and Housing is a Government Department established under the State Sector Act 1988.

Enquiries about the content of this document should be directed to:



Department of
Building and Housing
Te Tari Kaupapa Whare

Department of Building and Housing
PO Box 10-729, Wellington.
Telephone 0800 242 243
Fax 04 494 0290
Email: info@dbh.govt.nz

Compliance Documents are available from www.dbh.govt.nz

New Zealand Government

© Department of Building and Housing 2011

This Compliance Document is protected by Crown copyright, unless indicated otherwise. The Department of Building and Housing administers the copyright in this document. You may use and reproduce this document for your personal use or for the purposes of your business provided you reproduce the document accurately and not in an inappropriate or misleading context. You may not distribute this document to others or reproduce it for sale or profit.

The Department of Building and Housing owns or has licences to use all images and trademarks in this document. You must not use or reproduce images and trademarks featured in this document for any purpose (except as part of an accurate reproduction of this document) unless you first obtain the written permission of the Department of Building and Housing.

Handbook: Document History

	Date	Alterations
First published	July 1992	
Third edition	25 May 2007	
Amendment 11	Published 31 July 2010 Effective 30 September 2010	pp. 6–8, 11 Preface pp. 17–78, Code Clauses – amended and reformatted pp. 79–104A, References – amended and reprinted pp. 105–148f, Definitions – amended and reprinted pp. 150–158, 161–164, 168–170, 172, 176–178, 181, 184–185 187, 189, 191, 193, 196–199, 201, 204–208, Index
Amendment 12	10 October 2011	p. 6, Preface pp. 80–100, 102–104A, References pp. 108, 113 –115, 119–120, 122, 125 128, 136, 138, 144, 146–147, 148d–f, Definitions pp. 149–208, Index

Note: Page numbers relate to the document at the time of Amendment and may not match page numbers in current document.

Document Status

The most recent version of this document, as detailed in the Document History, is approved by the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing. It is effective from 10 October 2011 and supersedes all previous versions of this document.

People using this document should check for amendments on a regular basis. The Department of Building and Housing may amend any part of any document at any time. Up-to-date versions of documents are available from www.dbh.govt.nz

- Buildings need to be durable.
- Special traditional and cultural aspects of the intended use of a building need to be recognised.
- The whole-of-life costs of a building need to be considered.
- Standards are important in achieving compliance with the Building Code for building design and construction.
- Innovation in methods of building design and construction is important.
- People who undertake a rescue operation or firefighting in a building need to be able to expect a reasonable level of protection from injury or illness while doing so.
- The extent and effects of the spread of fire need to be limited to protect other household units and other property.
- Other property needs to be protected from physical damage resulting from the construction, use and demolition of a building.
- People with disabilities need to be able to enter and carry out normal activities and processes in a building.
- Buildings of significant cultural, historical or heritage value need to be preserved.
- Energy use in buildings needs to be efficient.
- The use of renewable sources of energy needs to be encouraged.
- Material use in buildings needs to be efficient and sustainable.
- Water use in buildings needs to be efficient and promote water conservation.
- Waste generated during the construction process needs to be reduced.

2.1.3 Application

The Building Act applies to:

- building construction, alteration, demolition or removal
- maintenance of a building's specified systems, such as lifts and fire protection installations.

The Building Act does not cover:

- planning and resource management
- occupational safety and health.

2.1.4 Structure

The Building Act has five parts.

Part 1: Contains the purpose and principles of the Building Act, together with an overview, commencement dates for various Provisions and definitions. These sections provide an important reference when reading and interpreting the Building Act.

Part 2 (and Schedules 1 and 2): Outlines matters relating to the Building Code and building control (such as building consents), including requirements of building work, requirements for the use of buildings, Provisions for certain categories of buildings and Provisions for the safety of dams.

Part 3: Sets out the functions, duties and powers of the Chief Executive of the Department of Building and Housing (the Department), territorial authorities, regional authorities and building consent authorities. It also deals with the accreditation and registration of building consent authorities, accreditation of dam owners, and product certification.

Part 4 (and Schedule 3): Covers matters relating to the licensing and disciplining of building practitioners.

Part 5 (and Schedule 4): Describes miscellaneous matters, including offences and criminal proceedings, implied terms of contracts, regulation-making powers, amendments to other enactments and the repeal of the former Act, and the transitional Provisions from the former Act to the Building Act.

2.2 Building Regulations

Building Regulations are made under and in accordance with the Building Act.

A number of regulations have been made under the Building Act. Currently (as at May 2007) there are seven sets of regulations.

1. **Building Regulations 1992**, made under the former Act and which include the Building Code. These regulations have been amended by the Building (Forms) Regulations 2004 so that only certain parts remain in force. Parts still in force are: Schedule 1 (Building Code), Regulation 3, Forms 16 & 17 (and Regulation 4 and Schedule 2 where they relate to these forms).
2. **Building (Forms) Regulations 2004**, as amended by the Building (Forms) Amendment Regulations 2005, which prescribes forms to be used under the Building Act.
3. **Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-prone Buildings) Regulations 2005**, as amended by the Building (Specified Systems, Change the Use, and Earthquake-Prone Buildings) Amendment Regulations 2005. These regulations outline and define the following terms.
 - Specified systems – the building systems that must be listed on compliance schedules and are subject to specific inspection and maintenance procedures. Schedule 1 provides the list of specified systems.
 - Change the use – to determine when a change in a building's use will require upgrading to meet certain requirements of the Building Act. Schedule 2 determines the use of all or parts of buildings.
 - Moderate earthquake – to define a moderate earthquake in relation to a building.
4. **Building (Fee for Determinations) Regulations 2005**
5. **Building Levy Order 2005**
6. **Building (Accreditation of Building**

- Consent Authorities) Regulations 2006
7. **Building (Consent Authority Accreditation Fees) Regulations 2007**
8. **Building (Designation of Building work Licence Classes) Order 2007**
9. **Building (Design Work Declared to be Building Work) Order 2007**
10. **Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2007**
11. **Building (Registration of Building Consent Authorities) Regulations 2007**
12. **Building (Infringement Offences, Fees, and Forms) Regulations 2007**
13. **Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2008**
14. **Building (Dam Safety) Regulations 2008**
15. **Building Practitioners (Complaints and Disciplinary Procedures) Regulations 2008**
16. **Building (Product Certification) Regulations 2008**
17. **Building (Building Consent Authority Transition) Order 2008**
18. **Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2009**
19. **Building (Minor Variations) Regulations 2009**
20. **Building (Designation of Building Work Licensing Classes) Order 2010**
21. **Building Practitioners (Licensing Fees and Levy) Regulations 2010**
22. **Building Practitioners (Register of Licensed Building Practitioners) Regulations 2010**
23. **Canterbury Earthquake (Building Act) order 2010**
24. **Building (National Multiple-use Approval) Regulations 2011**

Note: these regulations can be found at www.legislation.govt.nz

2.3 The New Zealand Building Code

The Building Code is contained in Schedule 1 of the Building Regulations 1992. The Building Code contains compulsory rules for all new building work.

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 12
Oct 2011

2.3.1 Content

The Building Code sets out performance criteria that building work must meet. It covers aspects such as structural stability, fire safety, access, moisture control, durability, services and facilities, and energy efficiency.

The Building Code does not prescribe how work should be done, but states how completed building work and its parts must perform.

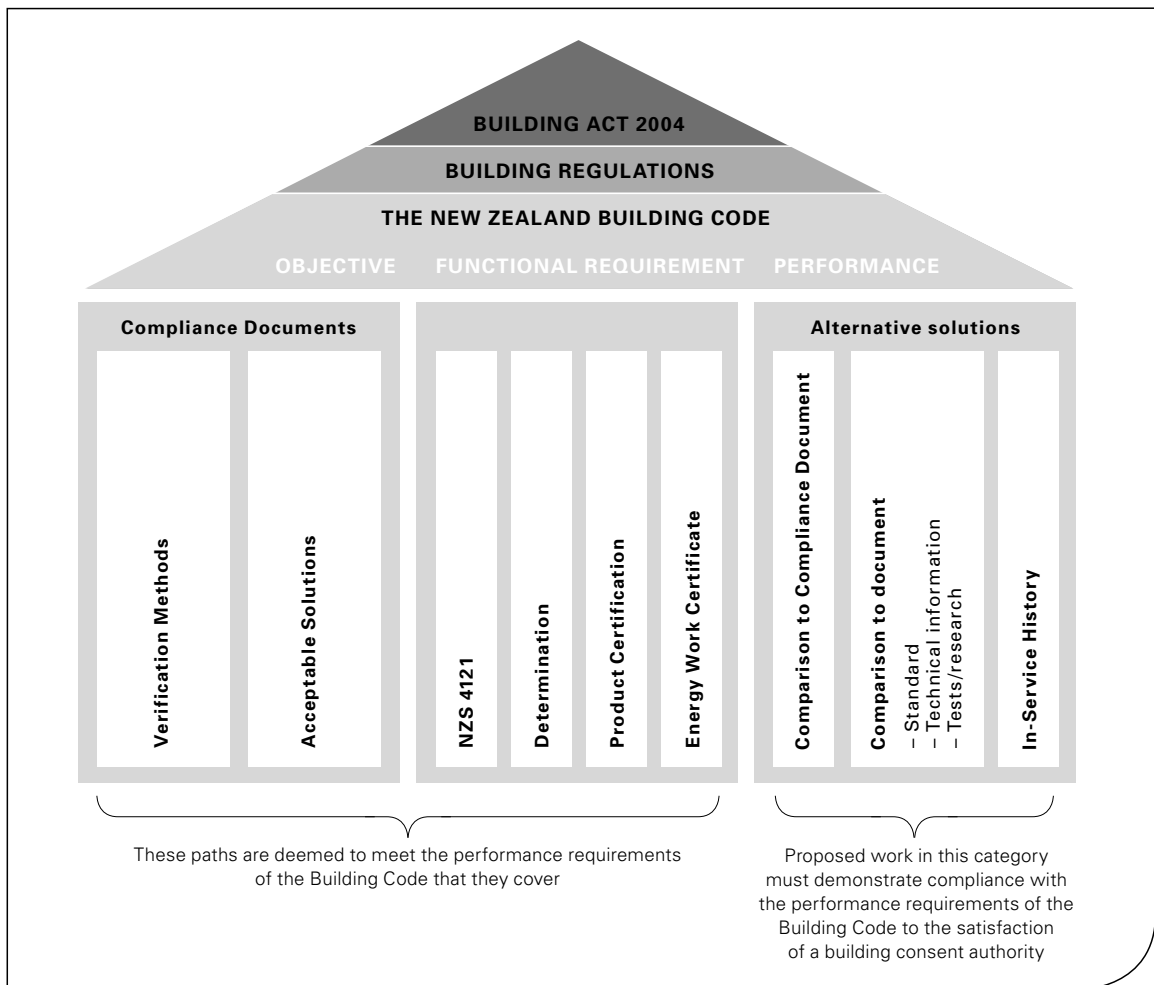
An advantage of a performance-based Building Code is flexibility. It contains no prescriptive requirements stipulating that certain products or designs must be used. This flexibility allows developments and innovation in building design, technology and systems.

2.3.2 Structure

The Building Code consists of two preliminary clauses and 35 technical clauses. Each technical clause has three levels that describe the requirements for the clause and is listed below.

1. **Objective** Social objectives the building must achieve.
2. **Functional requirement** Functions the building must perform to meet the Objective.
3. **Performance** The performance criteria the building must achieve. By meeting the performance criteria, the Objective and Functional requirement can be achieved.

Amend 11
Sep 2010



3.0 COMPLIANCE PATHS

Compliance with the Building Code can be demonstrated using various pathways. Understanding the New Zealand building control framework will help a building consent applicant decide which path is most suitable when designing and constructing building work.

The diagram below illustrates the hierarchy of New Zealand building controls, including the various compliance paths.

The top three tiers of the pyramid (the Building Act and Building Regulations) show mandatory building legislation that must be followed, as explained in the previous section.

The rest of the diagram shows various paths that may be used to demonstrate compliance with the Building Code. Compliance with the Building Code must be demonstrated using one or more of the paths. The applicant can choose which path(s) to follow.

With the exception of **alternative solutions**, the paths illustrated on the previous page must be accepted by the building consent authority as meeting the performance requirements of the Building Code. These pathways are discussed below.

3.1 Compliance Documents

Compliance Documents provide details for construction that, if followed, result in compliance with the Building Code. They are published by the Department. (Note: Compliance Documents were previously known as Approved Documents, and were published by the former Building Industry Authority.)

A design that complies with Compliance Documents must be accepted by a building consent authority as complying with the Building Code.

There is one Compliance Document for each of the 35 technical clauses in the Building Code. Each Compliance Document contains at least a Verification Method or an Acceptable Solution, and usually has both. However, some Compliance Documents have more than one Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example, the Compliance Document for Clause B1 of the Building Code has two Verification Methods and three Acceptable Solutions.

Verification Methods and Acceptable Solutions are usually referred to by their Building Code clauses and unique identification numbers. Some examples are listed below.

- The Acceptable Solutions for Clause E2 **External Moisture** are known as **E2/AS1**, **E2/AS2** and **E2/AS3**.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G4 **Ventilation** is known as **G4/AS1**.
- The Acceptable Solution for Clause G1 **Personal Hygiene** is known as **G1/AS1**.
- The Verification Methods for Clause B1 **Structure** are known as **B1/VM1** and **B1/VM4**.

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Amend 11
Sep 2010

3.1.1 Verification Methods

Verification Methods are tests or calculation methods that prescribe one way to comply with the Building Code. Verification Methods can include:

- calculation methods: using recognised analytical methods and mathematical models
- laboratory tests: using tests (sometimes to destruction) on prototype components and systems
- tests-in-situ: which may involve examination of plans and verification by test, where compliance with specified numbers, dimensions or locations is required (non-destructive tests, such as pipe pressure tests, are also included).

3.1.2 Acceptable Solutions

These are simple step-by-step instructions that show one way to comply with the Building Code.

3.2 Product certification

The Building Act contains provisions for a voluntary product certification scheme that will enable product manufacturers to have their products certified as meeting nominated Performance requirements of the Building Code.

Publications Referenced in Handbook and Compliance Documents

For the purposes of New Zealand Building Code compliance, acceptable reference documents include only the quoted edition and specific amendments as listed below.

Dates in brackets indicate that the Standard was reviewed and reissued without change that year.

Compliance Documents in which the particular references are quoted are identified by the relevant Building Code Clause and the number of the Verification Method or Acceptable Solution.

For example: **B1/VM1/AS3** indicates that the reference occurs in Verification Method 1, and Acceptable Solution 3 of the Compliance Document for Clause B1 Structure.

Where references are quoted in the Compliance Schedule Handbook, these are identified by the letters HB and the relevant section. For example: HB/SS 3 indicates that the reference occurs in the content guide for SS 3 in the Compliance Schedule Handbook.

Places where the reference documents are quoted, are more specifically identified by paragraph or table, in the reference list contained in each Compliance Document.

Contents	Page
Standards New Zealand	79
Standards Australia	91
British Standards Institution	95
New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)	98
Australian Publications (other than Standards)	100
Australia/New Zealand Publications (other than Standards)	100
British Publications (other than Standards)	101
International Publications	101
US Publications	103

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Standards New Zealand

NZS/BS 21: 1985 Specification for pipe threads for tubes and fittings where pressure-tight joints are made on the threads (metric dimensions)
Amend: 1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Where quoted

G10/AS1, G14/VM1

		Where quoted	
	NZS/BS 476:- Part 20: 1987	Fire tests on building materials and structures Method for determination of the fire resistance of elements of construction (general principles) <i>Amend: 6487</i>	C/AS1 C/AS1
	Part 21: 1987	Methods for determination of the fire resistance of loadbearing elements of construction	C/AS1
	Part 22: 1987	Methods for determination of the fire resistance of non-loadbearing elements of construction	C/AS1
	NZS/BS 970:- Part 1: 1991	Specification for wrought steels for mechanical and allied engineering purposes General inspection and testing procedures and specific requirements for carbon, carbon manganese, alloy and stainless steels <i>Amend: 1</i>	E1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 1170: Part 5: 2004	Structural Design Actions Earthquake design actions – New Zealand standard	B1/VM1, G12/AS2
	AS/NZS 1170: Part 0: 2002	Structural Design Actions General principles <i>Amends: 1, 2 and 4</i>	B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, C/AS1, G12/AS2 G10/AS1
	Part 1: 2002	Permanent, imposed and other actions <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2
	Part 2: 2002	Wind Actions <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 3: 2003	Snow and ice actions <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1/AS1/VM4, G12/AS2
	AS/NZS 1221: 1997	Fire hose reels <i>Amend: 1</i>	C/AS1
	AS/NZS 1254: 2002	Unplasticised PVC pipes and fittings for storm and surface water applications	E1/AS1
	AS/NZS 1260: 2002	PVC pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent applications	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1260: 2009	PVC-U Pipes and fittings for drain, waste and vent application	E1/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2, G14/VM1
	NZS/BS 1387: 1985 (1990)	Specification for screwed and socketed steel tubes and tubulars and for plain end steel tubes suitable for welding or screwing to BS 21 pipe threads <i>Amend: 1</i>	G10/AS1, G12/AS1, G14/VM1
	AS 1397: 2001	Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dipped zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated	E1/AS1
	AS/NZS 1477: 2006	PVC pipes and fittings for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1530:- Part 3: 1999	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures Simultaneous determination of ignitability, flame propagation, heat release and smoke release	C/AS1

		Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1546: 2008 On-site domestic wastewater treatment units Part 1: Septic tanks	G14/VM1
	AS/NZS 1547: 2000 On-site domestic wastewater management	G13/VM4
	AS/NZS 1604: Specification for preservative treatment Part 3: 2002 Plywood	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 1646: 2007 Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes	G13/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS/AS 1657: 1992 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders – Design, construction and installation (known as the SAA Code for fixed platforms, walkways, stairways, and ladders)	D1/AS1
	AS/NZS 1664:- Aluminium structures Part 1: 1997 Limit state design <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1668:- The use of ventilation and air conditioning in buildings Part 1: 1998 Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings	C/AS1, F7/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1680: Interior and workplace lighting Part 1: 2006 General principles and recommendations	F6/AS1
	AS/NZS 1730: 1996 Washbasins	G1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 1734: 1997 Aluminium and aluminium alloys – Flat sheet, coiled sheet and plate	E1/AS1, E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 1748: 1997 Timber – Stress graded – Product requirements for mechanically stress-graded timber	B1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 1859 Reconstituted wood-based panels Part 1: 2002 Particleboard	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 1905:- Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 1: 1997 Fire-resistant doorsets	HB/SS 15
	AS/NZS 2023: 1995 Baths for ablutionary purposes	G1/AS1
	AS/NZS 2032: 2006 Installation of PVC pipe systems <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2/AS3, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010		

	NZS/AS 2033: 2008 Installation of polyethylene pipe systems <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2, G14/AS1
Amends 11 and 12		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2243:1 2005 Safety in laboratories – Planning and operational aspects	HB/SS 11
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2243:8 2006 Safety in laboratories – Fume cupboards	HB/SS 11
	AS/NZS 2269: 2004 Plywood – Structural	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 2269: 2008 Plywood – Structural	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amends 11 and 12	AS/NZS 2280: 2004 Ductile iron pressure pipes and fittings <i>Amend: 1</i>	E1/AS1, G13/AS2
	AS/NZS 2293:- Emergency evacuation lighting for buildings	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance	HB/SS 4
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 2295: 2006 Pliable, permeable building underlays	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	AS/NZS 2566: 2002 Buried Flexible pipelines.	
	Part 1: 1998 Structural Design	B1/AS1, E1/AS1
	Part 2: 2002 Installation	B1/AS1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010		SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 2588: 1998 Gypsum plasterboard	
	AS/NZS 2642:- Polybutylene pipe systems	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 1: 2007 Polybutylene (PB) pipe extrusion compounds	G12/AS1
Amends 11 and 12	Part 2: 2008 Polybutylene (PB) pipe for hot and cold water applications	G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amends 11 and 12	Part 3: 2008 Mechanical jointing fittings for use with polybutylene (PB) pipes for hot and cold water applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	AS/NZS 2699: Built-in components for masonry construction.	SH/AS1
	Part 1: 2000 Wall ties	
	Part 2: 2000 Connectors and accessories	
	Part 3: 2002 Lintels and shelf angles (durability requirements)	
	AS/NZS 2712: 2002 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and (until 1 July 2009) construction	G12/AS2
	AS/NZS 2712: 2007 Solar and heat pump water heaters – design and construction	G12/AS2, SH/AS1

Modified
1 Aug 2011

		Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 2728: 2007 Prefinished/prepainted sheet metal products for interior/exterior building applications – Performance requirements	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2845:- Part 1: 2010	G12/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Water supply Materials, design and performance requirements	E2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2904: 1995 Damp-proof courses and flashings	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 2908: Part 2: 2000	B1/AS3 C/AS1, SH/AS1
	Cellulose-cement products Flat sheet	G9/VM1/AS1
	AS/NZS 2918: 2001 Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – installation	B2/AS1 B1/VM1
	AS/NZS 3000: 2007 Electrical installations <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1, G14/VM1
	NZS 3101:- Part 1: 2006	B1/AS3, SH/AS1
	Concrete structures standard The design of concrete structures <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/AS3
	NZS 3106: 2009	D1/AS1, G15/AS1
	Design of concrete structures for the storage of liquids	D1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3109: 1997	
	Specification for concrete construction <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
	NZS 3112:- Part 2: 1986	
	Methods of test for concrete Tests relating to the determination of strength of concrete <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3114: 1987	
	Specification for concrete surface finishes <i>Amend: 1</i>	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3116: 2002	
	Concrete segmental and flagstone paving <i>Amend: 1</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3350.2.35: 1999 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 3350.2.35: 1999 Safety of household and similar electrical appliances – Particular requirements – Instantaneous water heaters <i>Amends: 1, 2</i>	G12/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3404:- Part 1: 1997	B1/VM1
	Steel structures standard Steel structures standard <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010		

	AS/NZS 3500:- Part 1: 2003	National plumbing and drainage code Water services <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/VM1/AS1
	Part 2: 2003	Sanitary plumbing and drainage <i>Amend: 1</i>	G13/AS1/VM2/AS2/AS3
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 4: 2003	Heated water services <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/VM1/AS1/AS2
	Part 5: 2003	Domestic installation	SH/AS1
	NZS 3501: 1976	Specification for copper tubes for water, gas, and sanitation <i>Amend: 1, 2 and 3</i>	G10/AS1, G13/AS1/AS2 G12/AS1
	NZS 3502: 1976	Specification for copper and copper alloy tubes for general engineering purposes	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3518: 2004	Acrylonitrile butadiene styrene (ABS) compounds pipes and fittings for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	G13/AS2, G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	NZS/BS 3601: 1987 (1993)	Specification for carbon steel pipes and tubes with specified room temperature properties for pressure purposes <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3602:- Part 1: 2003	Timber and wood-based products for use in building	B2/AS1, E2/AS1 SH/AS1
	NZS 3603: 1993	Timber structures standard <i>Amend: 1, 2 (Applies to building work consented prior to 1 April 2007)</i> <i>Amend: 1, 2, 4 (Applies to building work consented on or after 1 April 2007)</i>	B1/VM1/VM4
	NZS 3604: 1990	Timber framed buildings	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3604: 1999	Timber framed buildings <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G12/AS2
	NZS 3604: 2011	Timber framed buildings	B2/AS1, E1/AS1, G12/AS2, G13/AS2, SH/AS1
			B1/AS1/AS3, E2/VM1/AS1/AS2 G12/AS2
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
	NZS 3605: 2001	Timber piles and poles for use in building	B1/VM4, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3617: 1979	Specification for profiles of weatherboards, fascia boards, and flooring	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3622: 2004	Verification of timber properties <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM1, SH/AS1

Where quoted

			Where quoted
	NZS 3631: 1988	New Zealand timber grading rules	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/VM4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 4</i>	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 3640: 2003	Chemical preservation of round and sawn timber <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	B2/AS1
	AS/NZS 3661:-	Slip resistance of pedestrian surfaces	
	Part 1: 1993	Requirements	D1/VM1/AS1
	Part 2: 1994	Guide to the reduction of slip hazards	D1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3666:-	Air-handling and water systems of buildings – Microbial Control	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2002	Design, installation and commissioning	G4/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 2002	Operation and maintenance	G4/AS1, HB/SS 9
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 3: 2000	Performance-based maintenance of cooling water systems	HB/SS 9
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS/AS 3725: 2007	Design for installation of buried concrete pipes	B1/VM1
	AS/NZS 3837: 1998	Method of test for heat and smoke release rates for materials and products using an oxygen consumption calorimeter	C/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 3869: 1999	Domestic solid fuel burning appliances – Design and construction	B1/AS3
	AS/NZS 3896: 1998	Waters – Examination for legionellae including <i>Legionella pneumophila</i> <i>Amend: 1</i>	HB/SS 9
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4020: 2005	Testing of products for use in contact with drinking water	E2/AS1, G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4058: 2007	Pre cast concrete pipes(pressure and non-pressure)	B1/VM1, E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4121: 2001	Design for access and mobility – Buildings and associated facilities	D1/AS1, G1/AS1, G5/AS1, SH/AS1
Amends 11 and 12	AS/NZS 4129: 2008	Fillings for polyethylene (PE) pipes for pressure applications	G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4130: 2003	Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	E1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4130: 2009	Polyethylene (PE) pipe for pressure applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4200:	Pliable building membranes and underlays	SH/AS1
	Part 1: 1994	Materials <i>Amend: 1</i>	

			Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4203: 1992	Code of practice for general structural design and design loadings for buildings <i>Corrigendum: 1</i>	G12/AS2
	NZS 4206: 1992	Concrete interlocking roofing tiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4210: 2001	Code of practice for masonry construction: materials and workmanship <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS3, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4211: 1985	Specification for performance of windows <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3</i>	SH/AS1
	NZS 4211: 2008	Specification for performance of windows	B1/VM1, E2/VM1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4214: 2006	Methods of determining the total thermal resistance of parts of buildings	E3/AS1, G5/AS1, H1/VM1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4217:-	Pressed metal tile roofs	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 1980	Specification for roofing tiles and their accessories	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1980	Code of practice for preparation of the structure and the laying and fixing of metal roofing tiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4218: 2004	Energy efficiency – housing and small building envelope	H1/VM1/AS1
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 4219: 1983	Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G10/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4219: 2009	Specification for seismic resistance of engineering systems in buildings	B1/VM1
	NZS 4223:-	Code of practice for glazing in buildings	
	Part 1: 2008	Glass selection and glazing	B1/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1985	The selection and installation of manufactured sealed insulating glass units <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	B1/AS1, SH/AS1
	Part 3: 1999	Human impact safety requirements	B1/AS1, F2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 4: 2008	Wind, dead, snow, and live actions	B1/AS1, SH/AS1
	NZS 4229: 1999	Concrete masonry buildings not requiring specific engineering design <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS1/AS3, E1/AS1, G13/AS2

		Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4230: 2004 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Design of reinforced concrete masonry structures B1/VM1
	NZS 4231: 1985 <i>Amend: A</i>	Specification for self-luminous exit signs F8/AS1
	NZS 4232:- Part 2: 1988	Performance criteria for fire resisting enclosures Fire resisting glazing systems HB/SS 15 C/AS1
	NZS HB 4236: 2002	Masonry veneer wall cladding E2/AS1
	NZS 4239: 1993 <i>Amend: A</i>	Automatic sliding door assemblies HB/SS 3
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4243: Part 1: 2007 Part 2: 2007	Energy efficiency – large buildings Building thermal envelope Lighting H1/VM1/AS1 H1/VM1/AS1
	NZS 4246: 2006	Energy efficiency – Installing insulation in residential buildings SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 4251:- Part 1: 2007	Solid plastering Cement plaster for walls, ceilings and soffits B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4256: Part 2: 1994	Plastic roof and wall cladding materials Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) building sheets E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4284: 2008	Testing of building facades E2/VM1
	NZS 4297: 1998	Engineering design for earth buildings B1/VM1, B2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4298: 1998 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Materials and workmanship for earth buildings E2/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4299: 1998 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Earth buildings not requiring specific design B1/AS1, B2/AS1, E2/AS2
	NZS 4303: 1990	Ventilation for acceptable indoor air quality G4/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4304: 2002	Health care waste management G15/AS1
	NZS 4305: 1996	Energy efficiency – domestic type hot water systems H1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4331: 1995 Part 1: Part 2: Part 3:	Metallic flanges Steel flanges Cast iron flanges Copper alloy and composite flanges G10/AS1, G14/VM1 G10/AS1, G14/VM1 G14/VM1
	NZS 4332: 1997	Non-domestic passenger and goods lifts D2/AS1, F6/AS1, HB/SS 8
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4401: 2006	High density polyethylene (PE-HD) pipes and fittings for soil and waste discharge (low and high temperature) systems inside buildings G13/AS1, G14/VM1

		Where quoted	
	NZS 4402:- Part 2:- Test 2.2: 1986 Test 2.6: 1986 Part 4:- Test 4.2.3: 1988	Methods of testing soils for civil engineering purposes Soil classification tests Determination of the liquid limit Determination of the linear shrinkage Soil compaction tests Related densities	B1/VM1 B1/Defs, SH/AS1 B1/Defs B1/VM4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4431: 1989 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Code of practice for earth fill for residential development	B1/VM1, E2/AS2 SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4442: 1988	Welded steel pipes and fittings for water, sewage and medium pressure gas	E1/AS1, G13/AS2, G14/VM1
	AS/NZS 4455: 1997	Masonry units and segmental pavers	SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 4456: 2003	Masonry unit and segmental pavers – Methods of test <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	SH/AS1
	NZS 4503: 2005	Hand operated fire fighting equipment	C/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4510: 2008 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Fire hydrant systems for buildings	C/AS1, HB/SS 6
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4512: 2010	Fire detection and alarm systems in buildings	C/AS1, HB/SS 2, HB/SS 15, F7/AS1
	NZS 4515: 2009	Fire sprinkler systems for life safety in sleeping occupancies (up to 2000 m ²)	C/AS1, HB/SS 1, F7/AS1
	NZS 4520: 2010	Fire resistant doorsets	C/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4534: 2006	Zinc and zinc/aluminium-alloy coatings on steel wire	E2/AS1
	NZS 4541: 2007 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Automatic fire sprinkler systems	C/AS1, F7/AS1 HB/SS 1
	AS/NZS 4586: 2004	Slip resistance classification of new pedestrian surface materials	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4600: 2005	Cold-formed steel structures	B1/VM1
	NZS 4602: 1988 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Low pressure copper thermal storage electric water heaters	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4603: 1985 <i>Amend: 1</i>	Installation of low pressure thermal storage electric water heaters with copper cylinders (open vented systems)	G12/AS1, SH/AS1

			Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4606:- Part 1: 1989	Storage water heaters General requirements <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3</i>	G12/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 2: 1989	Specific requirements for water heaters with single shells <i>Amend: A</i>	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 3: 1992	Specific requirements for water heaters with composite shells <i>Amend: A</i>	G12/AS1, SH/AS1
	NZS 4607: 1989	Installation of thermal storage electric water heaters: valve vented systems	G12/AS1
	NZS 4608: 1992	Control valves for hot water systems	G12/AS1
	NZS 4613: 1986	Domestic solar water heaters	G12/AS1/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 4614: 1986	Installation of domestic solar water heating systems	G12/AS2
	NZS 4617: 1989	Tempering (3-port mixing) valves	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4671: 2001	Steel reinforcing materials	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4671: 2001	Steel Reinforcing Materials <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/AS1/AS3
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 4680: 2006	Hot-dip galvanised (zinc) coating on fabricated ferrous articles	B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 4692: Part 2: 2005	Electric water heaters Minimum Energy Performance Standards (MEPS) requirements and energy labelling	G12/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 4740: 2000	Natural ventilaters – classification and performance	G4/AS1
	AS/NZS 4765: 2007	Modified polyvinyl chloride (PVC-M) pipes for pressure applications	G14/VM1
	AS/NZS 4858: 2004	Wet area membranes	E2/AS1
	AS/NZS 4859:- Part 1: 2002	Materials for the thermal insulation of buildings General criteria and technical provisions	H1/AS1
	AS/NZS 4936: 2002	Air admittance valves for use in sanitary plumbing and drainage systems.	G13/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS/NZS 5000.1 2005	Electric cables – Polymeric insulated – For working voltages up to and including 0.6/1 (1.2) kV <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 5000.2 2006	Electric cables – Polymeric insulated Part 2: For working voltages up to and including 450/750 v.	G12/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS/NZS 5065: 2005	Polyethylene and polypropylene pipe and fittings for drainage and sewerage applications <i>Amend: 1</i>	E1/AS1, G13/AS2

		Where quoted
	NZS/BS 5252: 1976 Framework for colour co-ordination for building purposes <i>Amend: 1</i>	F8/AS1
	NZS 5261: 2003 Gas installation <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	C/AS1, G4/AS1, G10/VM1/AS1, G11/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 5262: 2003 Gas appliance safety <i>Amend: 1</i>	SH/AS1
	NZS 5807:- Code of practice for industrial identification by colour, wording or other coding Part 2: 1980 Identification of contents of piping, conduit and ducts <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G10/AS1 G12/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	NZS 6214: 1988 Thermostats and thermal cutouts for domestic thermal storage electric water heaters (alternating current only)	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
Amends 11 and 12	NZS 6703: 1984 Code of practice for interior lighting design	G7/AS1/VM1 G8/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 6742: 1971 Code of practice for emergency lighting in buildings	F8/AS1, HB/SS 4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7601: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 3) for cold water services	G12/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7602: 1977 Specification for polyethylene pipe (Type 5) for cold water services <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NZS 7610: 1991 Blue polyethylene pipes up to nominal size 63 for below ground use for potable water <i>Amend: 1, 2, A</i>	G12/AS1
	NZS 7646: 1978 Specification for polyethylene pipes and fittings for gas reticulation	G10/AS1
	SNZ HB 8630: 2009 Tracks and outdoor visitor structures	B1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS/NZS 60335 Household and similar electrical Part 2.30: 2009 Safety appliance – Particular requirements for room heaters	SH/AS1

Standards Australia		Where quoted
	AS D26: 1972 Tube fittings with Dryseal American standard taper pipe and unified threads for automotive and industrial use	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	AS 1111: ISO metric hexagon bolts and screws – Product grades A and B	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 2000 Bolts Part 2: 2000 Screws	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1167:- Welding and brazing – Filler metals Part 1: 2005 Filler metal for brazing and braze welding	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1214: 1983 Hot-dip galvanised coatings on threaded fasteners (ISO metric coarse thread series)	SH/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1229: 2002 Laundry troughs	G2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	AS 1273: 1991 Unplasticized PVC (uPVC) downpipe and fittings for rainwater	E1/AS1
	AS 1308: 1987 Electric water heaters – Thermostats and thermal cut-outs <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1357:- Water valves for use with unvented water heaters Part 1: 2009 Protection valves <i>Amend: 1, 2</i> Part 2: 2005 Control valves <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G12/AS1 G12/AS1
	AS 1366:- Rigid cellular plastics sheets for thermal insulation Part 1: 1992 Rigid cellular polyurethane (RC/PUR) <i>Amend: 1</i> Part 2: 1992 Rigid cellular polyisocyanurate (RC/PIR) Part 3: 1992 Rigid cellular polystyrene – moulded (RC/PS-M) <i>Amend: 1</i> Part 4: 1989 Rigid cellular polystyrene – extruded (RC/PS-E)	C/AS1 C/AS1 C/AS1, E2/AS1 C/AS1, E2/AS1
Amends 11 and 12	AS 1397: 2001 Steel sheet and strip – Hot-dip zinc-coated or aluminium/zinc-coated	B1/AS3, E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS 1432: 2004 Copper tubes for plumbing, gasfitting and drainage applications	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amend 11 Sep 2010		

			Where quoted
	AS 1530:-	Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Part 1: 1994	Combustibility test for materials	C/AS1
	Part 2: 1993	Test for flammability of materials	C/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 4: 2005	Fire-resistance tests of elements of building construction	C/AS1
	AS 1566: 1997	Cooper and copper alloys – Rolled flat products	E2/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1579: 2001	Arc welded steel pipes and fittings for water and waste water	E1/AS1, G13/AS2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1589: 2001	Copper and copper alloy waste fittings	G13/AS1
	AS 1646: 2007	Elastomeric seals for waterworks purposes	E1/AS1
	AS 1668:-	The use of mechanical ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings	G4/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 2: 2002	Ventilation design for indoor-air containment control <i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	G4/AS1
	AS 1670:-	Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems – System design, installation and commissioning	
	Part 6: 1997	Smoke alarms	F7/AS1
	AS 1691: 1985	Domestic oil-fired appliances – installation	C/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1741: 1991	Vitrified clay pipes and fittings with flexible joints – Sewerage quality	E1/AS1, G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 1804: 1976	Soft lead sheet and strip	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS 1851: 2005	Maintenance of fire protection equipment	HB/SS 1, SS 2, SS 5, SS 9, SS 13, SS 15
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 1976: 1992	Vitreous china used in sanitary appliances	G1/AS1
	AS 2033: 2008	Installation of polyethylene pipe systems	G14/VM1, E1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2049: 2002	Roof tiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	AS 2050: 2002	Installation of roof tiles	E2/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 2159: 1995	Rules for the design and installation of piling (known as the SAA Piling Code) <i>Amend: 1</i>	B1/VM4
	AS 2220:-	Emergency warning and intercommunication systems in buildings	
	Part 1: 1989	Equipment design and manufacture	C/AS1
	Part 2: 1989	System design, installation and commissioning	C/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			

			Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2293:	Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings	
	Part 1: 2005	System design, installation and operation <i>Amend: 1</i>	F6/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		Part 2: 1995 Inspection and maintenance <i>Amend: 1,2</i>	F6/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		Part 3: 2005 Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs <i>Amend: 1</i>	F6/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 2845:-	Water supply – Mechanical backflow prevention devices	
	Part 3: 1993	Field testing and maintenance <i>Amend: 1</i>	G12/AS1, HB/SS 7
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 2870: 1996	Residential slabs and footings – Construction	SH/AS1
	AS 2887: 1993	Plastic waste fittings	G13/AS1
	AS 2890:-	Parking facilities	
	Part 1: 2004	Off-street parking <i>Amend: 1</i>	D1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		Part 2: 2002 Off-street commercial facilities <i>Amend: 1</i>	D1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 3566	Self-drilling screws for the building and construction industries	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	Part 2: 2002	Corrosion resistance	
	AS 3571: 2009	Plastic piping systems – Glass reinforced thermoplastics (GRP) systems based on unsaturated polyester (UP) resin – pressure and non-pressure drainage and sewerage (ISO 10467: 2004 MOD)	G13/AS2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 3588: 1996	Shower bases and shower modules	G1/AS1
	AS 3688: 2005	Water supply – Copper and copper alloy compression and capillary fittings and threaded end connectors <i>Amend: 1,2</i>	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amends 11 and 12	AS 3690: 2009	Installation of ABS pipe systems	G14/VM1
	AS 3706:-	Geotextiles – Methods of test	
Amend 11 Sep 2010		Part 1: 2003 General requirements, sampling, conditioning, basic physical properties and statistical analysis	E1/VM1
	AS 3730	Guide to the properties of paints for buildings	SH/AS1
	Part 6: 1991	Solvent-borne – Exterior – Full gloss enamel	
	Part 7: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Flat	
	Part 8: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Low gloss	
	Part 9: 1992	Latex – Exterior – Semi-gloss	
Amend 11 Sep 2010		Part 10: 1992 Latex – Exterior – Gloss	

			Where quoted
	AS 3730	Guide to the properties of paints for buildings	E2/AS1
	Part 6: 2006	Solvent-borne – Exterior – Full gloss enamel	E2/AS1
	Part 7: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Flat	E2/AS1
	Part 8: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Low gloss	E2/AS1
	Part 9: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Semi-gloss	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 10: 2006	Latex – Exterior – Gloss	E2/AS1
	AS 3786: 1993	Smoke alarms	F7/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		<i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 4046	Methods of testing roof tiles	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 9: 2002	Determination of dynamic weather resistance	E2/AS1
	AS 4072:-	Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant separating elements	C/AS1
	Part 1: 2005	Service penetrations and control joints	C/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011			
Amend 11 Sep 2010	AS 4139: 2003	Fibre reinforced concrete pipes and fittings	G13/AS2
	AS 4178: 1994	Electromagnetic door holders	HB/SS 3
	AS 4276:-		
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Part 3.1: 2007	Water plate microbiology – Pour plate method using plate count agar	HB/SS 9
	AS 4290: 2000	Design and installation of revolving doors	HB/SS 3
		<i>Amend: 1, 2</i>	
	AS 5007: 2007	Powered doors for pedestrian access and egress	HB/SS 3
Amend 12 Oct 2011	AS 60188.4: 2007	Hearing aids – magnetic field strength in audio-frequency induction loops for hearing aid purposes	HB/SS 12

British Standards Institution		Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 10: 2009 Specification for flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 143, and BS 1256: 2000 Threaded pipe fittings in malleable cast iron and cast copper alloy <i>Amend: 1, 2, 3, 4</i>	G10/AS1, G14/VM1
	BSDD 175: 1988 Code of practice for the identification of potentially contaminated land and its investigation	F1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 437: 2008 Specification for cast iron spigot and socket drain pipes and fittings <i>Amend: 5877</i>	G13/AS2
	BS 585:- Part 1: 1989 Wood stairs Specification for stairs with closed risers for domestic use, including straight and winder flights and quarter or half landings	D1/AS1
	BS EN 988: 1997 Zinc and zinc alloys. Specification for rolled flat products for building	E2/AS1
	BS EN 1044:1999 Brazing. Filler metals	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 1172: 1997 Copper and copper alloys – sheet and strip for building	E1/AS1
	BS EN 1490: 2000 Building valves. Combined temperature and pressure relief valves. Tests and requirements	G12/AS1
	BS EN 1491: 2000 Building valves. Expansion valves. Tests and requirements	G12/AS1
	BS EN 1567: 1999 Building valves. Water pressure reducing valves and combination water reducing valves. Requirements and tests.	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 1595: 1997 Pressure equipment made from borosilicate glass 3.3 – general rules for design, manufacture and testing	G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		

			Where quoted
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 1759 Part 1: 2004	Flanges and their joints. Circular flanges for pipes, valves, fittings and accessories, class-designated. Steel flanges, NPS 1/2 to 24.	E1/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010			
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 2971: 1991	Specification for Class II arc welding of carbon steel pipework for carrying fluids	G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 3402: 1969	Specification for quality of vitreous china sanitary appliances	G1/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS 3799: 1974 (1994)	Specification for steel pipe fittings, screwed and socket-welding for the petroleum industry	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 4790: 1996	Method for determination of the effects of a small source of ignition on textile floor coverings (hot metal nut method)	C/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 4991: 1974 (1982)	Specification for propylene copolymer pressure pipe	G14/VM1
	BS 5287: 1996	Specification for assessment and labelling of textile floor coverings tested to BS 4790	C/AS1
	BS 5378:- Part 1: 1980	Safety signs and colours Specification for colour and design	F8/AS1
	BS 5395:- Part 2: 1984	Stairs, ladders and walkways Code of practice for the design of helical and spiral stairs	D1/AS1
	BS 5446:- Part 1: 1990	Components of automatic fire alarm systems for residential premises Specification for self-contained smoke alarms and point-type smoke detectors <i>Amends: 6863, 7648, 9628</i>	F7/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS 6037:- Part 1: 2003 Part 2: 2004	Code of practice for the Planning, design, installation and use of permanently installed access equipment Suspended access equipment Travelling ladders and gantries	HB/SS 10 HB/SS 10
Amend 11 Sep 2010			

		Where quoted
	BS 6374:- Lining of equipment with polymeric materials for the process industries	
	Part 1: 1985 Specification for lining with sheet thermoplastics	G14/VM1
	Part 2: 1984 Specification for lining with non-sheet applied thermoplastics	G14/VM1
	Part 3: 1984 Specification for lining with stoved thermosetting resins	G14/VM1
	Part 4: 1984 Specification for lining with cold curing thermosetting resins	G14/VM1
	Part 5: 1985 Specification for lining with rubbers	G14/VM1
	BS 6464: 1984 Specification for reinforced plastics pipes, fittings and joints for process plants	G14/VM1
	BS 6538: 1987 Air permeance of paper and board	E2/AS1
	Part 3: 1987 Method for determination of air permeance using the Garley apparatus	
	BS 6920:- Suitability of non-metallic products for use in contact with water intended for human consumption with regard to their effect on the quality of the water	
	Part 1: 2000 Specification	G12/AS1
	Part 2: 2000 Methods of tests	G12/AS1
	Part 3: 2000 High temperature tests	G12/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	BS 7159: 1989 Code of practice for design and construction of glass-reinforced plastics (GRP) piping systems for individual plants or sites	G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	BS 7777: 1993 Flat bottomed, vertical, cylindrical storage tanks for low temperature service Part 1: Guide to the general provisions applying for design, construction and installation Part 2: Specification for design and construction of single, double and full containment metal tanks for the storage of liquified gas at temperatures down to -165°C Part 3: Recommendations for the design and construction of prestressed and reinforced concrete tanks and tank foundations and for the design and installation of tank insulation, tank lines and tank coating	G14/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	BS 8004: 1986 Code of practice for foundations	B1/VM4
Amend 11 Sep 2010		
	BS EN 10241: 2000 Steel threaded pipe fittings	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
	BS EN 10253-2: 2007 Butt-welding pipe fittings – non-alloy and ferric alloy steels with specific inspection requirements	G10/AS1

		Where quoted
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 10253-3: 2008 Butt-welding pipe fittings – wrought austenitic and austenitic-ferritic (duplex) stainless steels without specific inspection requirements	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 12056-2: 2000 Gravity drainage systems inside buildings. Sanitary pipework, layout and calculation	G13/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BS EN 12285: Workshop fabricated steel tanks	
	Part 1: 2003 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the underground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids	G14/VM1
	Part 2: 2005 Horizontal cylindrical single skin and double skin tanks for the aboveground storage of flammable and non-flammable water polluting liquids	G14/VM1
	BS EN 12585: 1999 Glass plant, pipeline and fittings – Pipeline and fittings DN 15 to 1000 – compatibility and interchangeability	G14/VM1
	BS EN 13121-3: 2008 GRP tanks and vessels for use above ground. Design and workmanship <i>Amend: 1 (2010)</i>	G14/VM1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BS EN 14324: 2004 Brazing. Guidance on the application of brazed joints	G10/AS1

New Zealand Publications

Building Research Association of New Zealand

Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Bulletin 330: 1995 Thin flooring materials – 2. Preparation and laying. Appendix 1	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Bulletin 411: 2001 Recommended timber cladding profiles	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	BRANZ EM 4: 2005 Evaluation method for jointing systems for flush finished fibre cement sheet	E2/AS1
	BRANZ EM 5: 2005 Evaluation method for adhesives and seam tapes for butyl and EPDM rubber membranes	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	BRANZ EM 6: 2011 Evaluation method for window and door support mechanisms or bars	E2/AS1
	BRANZ House Insulation Guide: 1995	E3/AS1, SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Paper C1: 1978 A construction guide to home insulation (second edition)	E3/AS1
	BRANZ Technical paper P21: 1991 A wall bracing test and evaluation procedure	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	BRANZ Supplement to P21 An evaluation method of P21 test results for use with NZS 3604: 1990	SH/AS1
	BRANZ Technical paper P36: 1983 Food processing floors, a guide to design, materials and construction. W.R. Sharman	G3/AS1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 Structural joints – strength and stiffness evaluation

Where quoted**SH/AS1**ALF 3: The 'Annual Loss Factor' Method. A design tool for energy efficient houses, 3rd edition (April 2000)
Albrecht Stoecklein and Mark Bassett**H1/Defs****Cement & Concrete Association of New Zealand**

CCANZ CP01: 2011 Code of Practice for weathertight concrete and concrete masonry construction

E2/AS3**Master Plumbers, Gasfitters and Drainlayers NZ Inc and Water New Zealand**NZ Backflow testing standard 2011AS1 3.6.1 b), 3.7.2
Field testing of backflow prevention devices and verification of air gaps**G12/AS1, HB/SS 7****New Zealand Metal Roofing Manufacturers Inc**

New Zealand Metal Roof and Wall Cladding Code of Practice: 2008

E2/AS1**The National Association of Steel Framed Housing Inc (NASH)**NASH Standard: Residential and Low Rise Steel Framing Part 1 2010
Design Criteria**B1/AS1**Amend 12
Oct 2011**Government Departments and Agencies****Department of Labour**

Workplace exposure standards and biological indices for New Zealand: 1992

F1/VM1, G4/VM1**Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries**

MQ 1: 1988 Qual approvals manual

G3/AS1**Ministry of Economic Development**

NZECP 34: 2001 Electrical safety distances

G9/VM1

NZECP 36: 1993 Harmonic levels

G9/VM1

NZECP 51: 2004 Homeowner/occupier's electrical wiring work in domestic installations

G9/AS1

NZECP 54: 2001 Installation of recessed luminaires and auxiliary equipment

C/AS1, G9/AS1**Ministry of Health**

Ministry of Health: 2005 Drinking Water Standards for New Zealand

SH/AS1

Ministry of Health: 2006 Household water supplies: the selection, operation and maintenance of individual household water supplies

SH/AS1Amend 11
Sep 2010

Ministry of Transport

Power Lift Rules: 1989

Rules for power lifts not exceeding 750 watts (one horsepower): 1985

SCIONAmend 12
Oct 2011 | Measurement of moisture content of wood**National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research Ltd (NIWA)**Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Temperature Normals for New Zealand 1961-1990
by A I Tomlinson and J Sansom (ISBN 0478083343)**New Zealand Legislation**Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Chartered Professional Engineers of New Zealand Act 2002

Fencing of Swimming Pools Act 1987

Amend 12
Oct 2011 | Fire Safety and Evacuation of Buildings Regulations 2006

Gas Regulations 1993

Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996

Hazardous Substances (Classification) Regulations 2001

Hazardous Substances (Classes 1 to 5 Controls) Regulations 2001

Hazardous Substances (Dangerous Goods and Scheduled
Toxic Substances) Transfer Notice 2004Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Hazardous Substances (Disposal) Regulations 2001

Hazardous Substances (Emergency Management) Regulations 2001

Health & Safety in Employment Act 1992

Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 2006

Resource Management Act 1991

Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Resource Management (National Environment Standards relating
to certain Pollutants, Dioxins and other Toxins)
Regulations: 2004 (NESAQ)**New Zealand Geomechanics Society**Guidelines for the field descriptions of soils and rocks in engineering
use. Nov 1988Amend 12
Oct 2011**Australian Publications****Building Control Commission, State of Victoria, Australia**Smoke management in large spaces in buildings: 1998
Milke and Klote**Where quoted****D2/AS2, HB/SS 8****D2/AS2, HB/SS 8****E2/AS1****H1/Defs****B1/VM1****F4/AS1****C/AS1****G12/AS1****F3/VM1****F3/VM1****F3/VM1****F3/VM1****G14/VM1****F3/VM1****HB/SS 9****SH/AS1****E1/VM1, G14/VM1****SH/AS1****B1/VM1****C/AS1**

Australia/NZ Publications

Australian and New Zealand Environment and Conservation Council

Guidelines for assessment and management of contaminated sites: 1992

Where quoted

F1/VM1

British Publications

Building Research Establishment (UK)

BRE Defect action sheet DAS 131: May 1989

External walls: Combustible external plastics insulation:
Horizontal fire barriers

C/AS1

BRE Report 135: 1988

Fire performance of external thermal insulation for walls in multi-storey buildings. Rogowski B.F., Ramaprasad R., Southern J.R.

C/AS1

BRE Report 186: 1990

Design principles for smoke ventilation in enclosed shopping centres. Morgan and Gardner

C/AS1

BRE Report 258: 1992

Design approaches for smoke control in atrium buildings. Hansell and Morgan

C/AS1

Chartered Institution of Building Services Engineers, London

CIBSE Code Series A: 1996

Air distribution systems

G4/VM1/AS1

International Publications

EIFS Industry Members Association

EIMA 101.91: 1992 Standard Guide for resin of resin coated glass fibre mesh in exterior insulation and finish systems (EIFS), Class PB.

E2/AS1

The European Committee for Standardisation

EN 81:- Safety rules for the construction and installation of lifts

Part 1: 1998 Electric lifts

Part 2: 1998 Hydraulic lifts

D2/AS1, HB/SS 8

D2/AS1, HB/SS 8

EN 115: 1983 Safety rules for the construction of escalators and passenger conveyors

D2/AS3, HB/SS 8

EN 12380: 1999 Air admittance valves for drainage systems – Requirements and test methods

G13/AS1

Eurocode DD ENV 1991-2-2: 1996

Eurocode 1: Basis of design actions on structures

Part 2.2: Actions on structures exposed to fire

C/AS1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

International Standards Organisation, Geneva

ICBO Evaluation Services Inc AC148: Acceptance criteria for flashing materials

E2/AS1

ISO 140/VII: 1978 Field measurements of impact sound insulation of floors

G6/VM1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

ISO 9223: 1992 Corrosion of metals and alloys; corrosivity of atmospheres; classification

E2/AS1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

ISO 11600: 2002 Building Construction – Jointing products Classification and requirements for sealants

E2/AS1, SH/AS1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

ISO/TS 15510: 2003 Stainless steels – chemical composition

E2/AS1, SH/AS1

Amend 12
Oct 2011

World Health Organisation/Food and Agriculture Organisation

Environmental Health Criteria 70

“Environment health criteria” for various chemicals

F1/VM1

Evaluation of certain food additives and contaminants, Technical report series 776 Geneva: 1989

F1/VM1

IARC Monographs on the evaluation of carcinogenic risks to humans for individual chemicals, groups of chemicals, or processes. Published by the International Agency for Research on Cancer

F1/VM1

Principles for the safety assessment of food additives and contaminants in food, Geneva: 1987

F1/VM1

Where quoted

		Where quoted
United States of America Publications		
<hr/>		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	American National Standards Institute and American Society of Mechanical Engineers	
	ANSI/ASME B16.1: 1989 Cast iron pipe flanges and flanged fittings, Class 25, 125, 250 and 800	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ANSI/ASME B16.3: 1985 Malleable-iron threaded fittings, Classes 150 and 300	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ANSI/ASME B16.5: 1988 Pipe flanges and flanged fittings, steel-nickel alloy and other special alloys	G10/AS1
	ANSI/ASME B16.9: 1990 Factory-made wrought steel butt-welding fittings	G10/AS1
	ANSI B16.11: 1980 Forged steel fittings, socket-welding and threaded	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	American Petroleum Institute	
	API SPEC 5L: 1991 Specification for line pipe	G10/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	API STD 1104: 1988 Welding of pipelines and related facilities	G10/AS1
	American Society of Heating, Refrigeration and Air Conditioning Engineers (ASHRAE)	
	Design of smoke management systems. Klotz and Milke 1992	C/AS1
	American Society of Sanitary Engineers	
	ASSE 1050: 1991 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing DWV systems stack type devices	G13/AS1
	ASSE 1051: 1992 Performance requirements for air admittance valves for plumbing drainage systems	G13/AS1
	American Society for Testing and Materials	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	ASTM A 53 – 90a Specification for pipe, steel, black and hot-dipped, zinc-coated welded and seamless	G10/AS1
	ASTM A 106 – 91a Specification for seamless carbon steel pipe for high temperature service	G10/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011		

	Where quoted
ASTM D 1143: 1981 Test method for piles under static axial compressive load	B1/VM4
Amend 12 Oct 2011	
Amends 11 and 12	
ASTM C 1549: 2009 Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer	SH/AS1
ASTM C 1549: 2009 Standard Test Method for Determination of Solar Reflectance Near Ambient Temperature Using a Portable Solar Reflectometer	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	
ASTM D 1667: 2005 Standard Test Specification for Flexible Cellular Materials – Vinyl Chloride Polymers and Copolymers (Closed-cell foam)	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	
ASTM D 2240: 2005 Standard Test method for Rubber Property	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	
ASTM D 6134: 1997 Standard Specification for Vulcanised Rubber Sheets Used in Waterproofing Systems	SH/AS1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	
ASTM D 6134: 2007 Standard Specification for Vulcanised Rubber Sheets Used in Waterproofing Systems	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	
ASTM E 96: 1992 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials	SH/AS1
ASTM E 96: 2005 Standard test methods for water vapour transmission of materials	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	
ASTM E104: 2002 Standard Practice for Maintaining Constant Relative Humidity by Means of Aqueous Solutions	E2/AS1
ASTM E 336: 1990 Method for measurement of airborne sound insulation in buildings	G6/VM1
ASTM E 413: 1987 Classification for rating sound insulation	G6/VM1
ASTM E 492: 1990 Test method for laboratory measurement of impact sound transmission through floor-ceiling assemblies using a tapping machine	G6/VM1
Amends 10 and 11	
ASTM E 903: 1996 Standard Test Method for Solar Absorbance, Reflectance, and Transmittance of Materials Using Integrating Spheres	SH/AS1
ASTM E 989: 1989 Classification for determination of impact insulation class (IIC)	G6/VM1
ASTM E 2098: 2000 Standard Test Method for Determining Tensile Breaking Strength of Glass Fibre Reinforcing Mesh for Use in Class PB Exterior Insulation and Finish Systems (EIFS), after Exposure to a Sodium Hydroxide Solution	E2/AS1

		Where quoted
	ASTM E 2134: 2001 Standard Test Method for Evaluation the Tensile-Adhesion Performance of an Exterior Insulation and Finish System (EIFS)	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM G 154: 2006 Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	E2/AS1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ASTM G 155: 2005 Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials	E2/AS1
International Conference of Building Officials, America		
	Uniform Building Code Standard 4.1: 1997 Proscenium fire safety curtains	C/AS1
	Uniform Building Code Standard 26-2: 1997 Test method for the evaluation of thermal barriers	C/AS1
National Fire Protection Association of America		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	NFPA 92B: 1995 Guide for smoke management systems in malls, atria and large areas	C/AS1
	NFPA 285: 1998 Standard method of test for the evaluation of flammability characteristics of exterior non load bearing wall assemblies containing components using the intermediate scale, multi-storey test apparatus	C/AS1
United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA)		
	USEPA SW 846: 1986 Test methods for evaluating solid waste	F1/VM1
	EPA/540/1 – 89/002: 1989 Risk assessment guidance for Superfund, Vol 1. Human health evaluation manual (Part A) Interim final. Prepared by USEPA Office of Emergency and Remedial Response	F1/VM1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Federal Specification Standard TT-S-00230C: Elastomeric type, cold applied single component for caulking, sealing, and glazing in buildings, building areas (plazas, decks, pavements, and other structures)	E2/AS1, SH/AS1
	Cross-connection Control Manual: 1989	HB/SS 7

United States Public Health Service

Toxicological profiles on individual chemicals. Prepared by the Agency for Toxicological Substances and Disease Registry, in collaboration with the US Environmental Protection Agency

Miscellaneous Publication

Casarett and Doull's Toxicology. The basic science of poisons. 4th ed. Macmillan. New York 1991. Klassen CD, Amdur MO, Doull J (Eds)

Where quoted**F1/VM1****F1/VM1**

Definition	Source
<p>(2) For the purposes of subsection (1), an allotment is taken—</p> <p>(a) to be a continuous area of land even if part of it is physically separated from any other part by a road or in any other manner, unless the division of the allotment into those parts has been allowed by a subdivision consent granted under the Resource Management Act 1991 or a subdivision approval under any former enactment relating to the subdivision of land:</p> <p>(b) to include the balance of any land from which any allotment is being or has been subdivided."</p>	
<p>Alter in relation to a <i>building</i>, includes to rebuild, re-erect, repair, enlarge and extend the <i>building</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Alternative solution means a solution that is compliant with the <i>Building Code</i> but is not part of the <i>Compliance Document</i>.</p>	HB
<p>Aluminium flashings Aluminium <i>flashings</i> shall be a minimum thickness of 0.7 mm, and formed from 5000 series in accordance with AS/NZS 1734 and, where pre-painted, have a factory-applied finish complying with AS/NZS 2728.</p>	Simple House
<p>Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings Aluminium-zinc coated steel flashings shall be:</p> <p>(a) <i>BMT</i> 0.55 mm minimum of steel for <i>flashings</i> generally</p> <p>(b) <i>BMT</i> 0.4 mm of steel for roll-formed roll-top ridge <i>flashings</i></p> <p>(c) in aluminium-zinc coating of AZ150 to AS 1397, with a factory-applied finish in accordance with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in sea spray zone and corrosion zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.</p>	Simple House
<p>Amenity means an attribute of a <i>building</i> which contributes to the health, physical independence, and well being of the <i>building's</i> users but which is not associated with disease or a specific illness.</p>	Code
<p>Anti-ponding board A board laid under the lowest row of concrete and clay roof tiles and supports the <i>roof underlay</i>. The board is sloped to ensure moisture under the tiles is directed to the exterior of the roof.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Appliance hearth A layer of <i>non-combustible</i> material under or near an appliance. It may be either part of the <i>building</i> structure or an overlay on a <i>combustible</i> floor.</p>	CD-C
<p>Approved temperature data means the temperature data contained in A I Tomlinson and J Sansom, <i>Temperature Normals for New Zealand for period 1961 to 1990</i> (NIWA, ISBN 0478083343).</p>	Code CD-H1
<p>Appurtenant structure, in relation to a <i>dam</i>, means a structure that is integral to the proper functioning of the <i>dam</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Apron flashing A near flat or sloping <i>flashing</i> with a vertical upstand, used at junctions between roofs and walls.</p>	CD-E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>Asbestos as defined by the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1983 means:</p> <p>(a) Actinolite, amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or tremolite; or</p> <p>(b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph a) of this definition; or</p> <p>(c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of any such mineral; or</p> <p>(d) A material or article that is contaminated by any such material.</p> <p>COMMENT: Asbestos now has the meaning given to it by Regulation 2 of the Health and Safety in Employment (Asbestos) Regulations 1998. This meaning is:</p> <p>(a) Amosite, chrysotile, crocidolite, fibrous actinolite, fibrous anthophyllite, or fibrous tremolite; or</p> <p>(b) A mixture containing a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or</p> <p>(c) A material that is composed wholly or partly of a mineral specified in paragraph (a); or</p> <p>(d) A material or article that is contaminated by a mineral specified in paragraph (a):</p>	CD-F2
<p>Atmospheric burner A burner system where all the air for combustion is induced by the inspirating effect of a gas injector and/or by natural draught in the combustion chamber without mechanical assistance.</p>	CD-G4
<p>Attached garage A garage that shares a common <i>wall</i> or <i>walls</i> with a habitable <i>building</i>, and is enclosed by <i>roof</i> and <i>wall claddings</i> that are continuous with the habitable part of the <i>building</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Authority means the Building Industry Authority that was established under the Building Act 1991.</p> <p>COMMENT: The Authority was dissolved under the <i>Building Act 2004</i> and its functions and powers transferred to the Department of Building and Housing.</p>	HB

B

Definition	Code
<p>Backcountry hut means a building that—</p> <p>(a) is located on land that is administered by the Department of Conservation for conservation, recreational, scientific, or other related purposes, including any land administered under any of the following:</p> <p>(i) the Conservation Act 1987;</p> <p>(ii) the National Parks Act 1980;</p> <p>(iii) the Reserves Act 1977; and</p> <p>(b) is intended to provide overnight shelter to any person who may visit and who carries his or her own food, bedding, clothing, and outdoor equipment; and</p> <p>(c) contains only basic facilities, which may include (but are not limited to) any or all of the following:</p> <p>(i) sleeping platforms or bunks;</p> <p>(ii) mattresses;</p> <p>(iii) food preparation surfaces:</p>	Code

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>(iv) appliances for heating;</p> <p>(v) appliances for cooking;</p> <p>(vi) toilets; and</p> <p>(d) has been certified by the Director-General as being in a location that wheelchair users are unlikely to be able to visit; and</p> <p>(e) is intended to be able to sleep—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) no more than 20 people in its <i>backcountry hut sleeping area</i>; and</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) no more than 40 people in total; and</p> <p>(f) does not contain any connection, except by <i>radiocommunications</i>, to a <i>network utility operator</i>]</p>	
<p>Backcountry hut sleeping area means the area of a backcountry hut that contains sleeping platforms, bunks, or beds that are—</p> <p>(a) within the same room as a food preparation or eating area; or</p> <p>(b) in a fully enclosed room that is separate from any food preparation or eating area and has—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) internal walls that limit the spread of fire; and</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) the means of direct egress to outside the hut.</p>	Code
<p>Backflow A flowing back or reversal of the normal direction of the flow caused by <i>back-pressure</i> and includes <i>back-siphonage</i>.</p>	CD-C
<p>Backflow prevention device A device that prevents <i>backflow</i>.</p>	CD-C, CD-G12
<p>Backing rod Closed cell polyethylene foam (PEF) rod inserted into gap to provide backing support for foam <i>air seal</i> or <i>sealant</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Back-pressure A <i>backflow</i> condition caused by the downstream pressure becoming greater than the supply pressure.</p>	CD-G12
<p>Back-siphonage <i>Backflow</i> condition caused by the supply pressure becoming less than the downstream pressure.</p>	CD-G12
<p>Baluster A post providing the support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</p>	CD-B1, CD-B2
<p>Baluster An infill member that provides support for the top and bottom rails of a barrier.</p>	Simple House
<p>Balustrade The infill parts of a barrier (typically between floor and top rail).</p>	CD-B2, CD-F4
<p>Basement Any <i>firecell</i> or part of a <i>firecell</i> below the level of the lowest <i>final exit</i>.</p>	CD-C
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>Because <i>fire safety precautions</i> are increased with increases in <i>escape height</i>, the precautions for <i>basements</i> increase with <i>basement</i> depth. Thus a single floor <i>building</i> with one <i>basement</i> level is treated as a two floor <i>building</i>, a single floor <i>building</i> with three <i>basement</i> levels as a four floor <i>building</i> and the requirements of C/AS1 Table 4.1 shall be applied downwards as opposed to upwards for levels above ground.</p>	
<p>Base metal thickness (BMT) The thickness of the bare or base metal before any subsequent coating, such as galvanizing.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Batten See ceiling batten, tile batten.</p>	Simple House

Definition	Source
<p>Bird's beak A double fold applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <i>flashing</i> to stiffen the edge and to assist in deflecting moisture away from the <i>cladding system</i> below. Refer also <i>Kick-out</i> and <i>Drip edge</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>COMMENT: A <i>bird's beak</i> is used at the bottom of a <i>capping</i> to deflect water away from the <i>enclosed balustrade cladding</i>.</p>	
<p>Blocking Solid timber having the same depth as the joists and set at right angles between the joists to stiffen and prevent them from buckling.</p>	Simple House
<p>Bond, running or stretcher The <i>bond</i> when the units of each course overlap the units in the preceding course by between 25% and 75% of the length of the units.</p>	Simple House
<p>Bottom plate A plate placed under the bottom end of <i>studs</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Boundary means any <i>boundary</i> which is shown on a survey plan approved by the Chief Surveyor and which is deposited in the Titles Office whether or not a new title has been issued.</p>	CD-C
<p>Boundary joist A joist running along the outer ends of the floor joists.</p>	CD-B1
<p>Bracing Any method employed to provide lateral support to a <i>building</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Bracing capacity Strength of <i>bracing</i> of a whole <i>building</i> or of elements within a <i>building</i>. <i>Bracing capacity</i> is measured in <i>bracing units</i> (BUs).</p>	Simple House
<p>Bracing demand The horizontal forces to be resisted by a whole <i>building</i> or by an element within a <i>building</i>. These horizontal forces are a result of wind or earthquake action. <i>Bracing demand</i> forces are measured in <i>bracing units</i> (BUs).</p>	Simple House
<p>Bracing line A line along or across a <i>building</i> containing <i>wall bracing elements</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Bracing rating The lateral load resistance assigned, for example, to a <i>wall bracing system</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Bracing unit (BU) A <i>bracing unit</i> is a measure of:</p> <p>(a) the horizontal force (<i>bracing demand</i>) on the <i>building</i> (1 kiloNewton is equal to 20 bracing units)</p> <p>(b) the resistance to horizontal force (<i>bracing capacity</i>) of <i>building elements</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Branch discharge pipe A <i>discharge pipe</i> that serves one or more <i>fixture discharge pipes</i> for any one floor.</p>	CD-G13
<p>Branch vent pipe A <i>vent pipe</i> that serves two or more <i>fixture vent pipes</i>.</p>	CD-G13
<p>Building has the meaning given to it by sections 8 and 9 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04

Section 8 states:

"8 Building: what it means and includes:

- (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires, building—
- (a) means a temporary or permanent movable or immovable structure (including a structure intended for occupation by people, animals, machinery, or chattels); and

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>Building height The vertical distance between the floor level of the lowest <i>final exit</i> from the <i>building</i>; and the highest occupied floor level containing or supporting any <i>purpose group</i> other than IE, IA or ID, or penthouses used to enclose <i>stairways</i>, liftshafts or machinery rooms located on or within the roof.</p>	Code
<p>Building levy means a levy payable under section 53 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Building method or product has the meaning given to it by section 20 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>. Section 20(2)(c) states:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">“(c) building methods, methods of construction, building design, or building materials (building methods or products) that have a current product certificate issued under section 269.”</p>	BA04
<p>Building performance index (BPI) in relation to a <i>building</i>, means the <i>heating energy</i> of the <i>building</i> divided by the product of the <i>heating degrees total</i> and the sum of the <i>floor area</i> and the <i>total wall area</i>, and so is calculated in accordance with the following formula:</p> $\text{BPI} = \frac{\text{heating energy}}{\text{heating degrees total} \times (\text{floor area} + \text{total wall area})}$	Code
<p>Building work—</p> <p>(a) means work—</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(i) for, or in connection with, the <i>construction</i>, <i>alteration</i>, demolition, or removal of a <i>building</i>; and</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(ii) on an <i>allotment</i> that is likely to affect the extent to which an existing <i>building</i> on that <i>allotment</i> complies with the <i>Building Code</i>; and</p> <p>(b) includes <i>sitework</i>; and</p> <p>(c) includes design work (relating to <i>building work</i>) that is design work of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be restricted <i>building work</i> for the purposes of this Act; and</p> <p>(d) in Part 4, and the definition in this section of “supervise”, also includes design work (relating to building work) of a kind declared by the Governor-General by Order in Council to be <i>building work</i> for the purposes of Part 4]</p>	BA04
<p>Building warrant of fitness (BWofF) means the warrant of fitness an <i>owner</i> of a <i>building</i> must supply to a <i>territorial authority</i> under section 108 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	HB
<p>Building wrap or building underlay See wall underlay.</p>	Simple House

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>Butt flashing A preformed wall <i>flashing</i>, used to flash windows and corners on horizontal profiled metal wall <i>cladding</i>. A <i>butt flashing</i> is shaped to underflash the <i>cladding</i>, with the <i>cladding</i> butting against the exposed box portion of the <i>flashing</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Butyl rubber and EPDM flashings <i>Butyl rubber</i> and <i>EPDM flashings</i> shall be a minimum thickness of 1.0 mm, and shall comply with the following parts of Table 1 in ASTM D6134:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (b) tensile strength (c) elongation (d) water absorption (e) water vapour transmission (f) heat aging followed by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> i) tensile strength ii) elongation. 	Simple House
C	
<p>Cable car—</p> <p>(a) means a vehicle—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) that carries people or goods on or along an inclined plane or a suspended cable; and (ii) that operates wholly or partly outside of a <i>building</i>; <p>And</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (iii) the traction for which is supplied by a cable or any other means; but <p>(b) does not include a lift that carries people or goods between the floors of a <i>building</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Cantilevered deck A <i>deck</i> where no support is provided at the outer extremities of the <i>deck</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>COMMENT: <i>Cantilevered decks</i> are often constructed by extending <i>framing</i> members through the <i>cladding</i> beyond the <i>building</i> face. <i>Cantilevered decks</i> are sometimes known as balconies.</p>	
<p>Canterbury earthquake region is the area contained within the boundaries of the Christchurch City Council, the Selwyn District Council and the Waimakariri District Council.</p>	CD-B1
<p>Capacity The load resistance of a connector or fixing.</p>	Simple House
<p>Capping A <i>flashing</i> formed to cover the top of an <i>enclosed balustrade</i> or <i>parapet</i>. Also known as a coping.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Cavity barrier A <i>construction</i> provided to close openings within a <i>concealed space</i> against the passage of <i>fire</i>, or to restrict the spread of <i>fire</i> within such spaces.</p>	CD-C
<p>Cavity batten A vertical packing member used to create a <i>drained cavity</i> as part of a <i>cladding system</i>.</p>	CD-E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>Cavity spacer A short block used to provide intermittent support for fixings or pipe penetrations through a <i>drained cavity</i>, while not interrupting drainage within the cavity.</p> <p>A <i>cavity spacer</i> is required to be set to a slight fall (5° minimum from horizontal) to allow drainage of any moisture from the top.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Cavity wall A term used to describe a wall that incorporates a <i>drained cavity</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Ceiling batten A horizontal member fixed below <i>rafters</i>, or truss bottom chords to which the ceiling <i>lining</i> is attached.</p>	Simple House
<p>Certificate of acceptance means a certificate issued under section 96 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Certificate for public use means a certificate issued under section 363A of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	HB
<p>Change the use for the purposes of sections 114 and 115 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>, change the use, in relation to a <i>building</i>, means to change the use (determined in accordance with regulation 6) of all or a part of the <i>building</i> from one use (the old use) to another (the new use) and with the result that the requirements for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> in relation to the new use are additional to, or more onerous than, the requirements for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> in relation to the old use.</p>	BR2
<p>Check valve (or non-return valve) A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a <i>backflow prevention device</i>.</p>	CD-G12
<p>Chimney A <i>non-combustible</i> structure which encloses one or more <i>flues</i>, <i>fireplaces</i> or other heating appliances.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C, CD-G4
<p>Chimney back The <i>non-combustible</i> wall forming the back of a <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C
<p>Chimney base That part of a <i>chimney</i> which houses the <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	CD-B1
<p>Chimney breast The front <i>fireplace</i> wall <i>construction</i> above the <i>fireplace</i> opening.</p>	CD-C
<p>Chimney jambs The side walls of a <i>fireplace</i>.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C
<p>Cladding The exterior weather-resistant surface of a <i>building</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>COMMENT: Includes any supporting substrate and, if applicable, surface treatment.</p>	
<p>Cladding system The outside or exterior weather-resistant surface of a <i>building</i>; including <i>roof cladding</i> and <i>roof underlays</i>, wall <i>cladding</i> and <i>wall underlays</i>, and cavity components, rooflights, windows, doors and all penetrations, <i>flashings</i>, seals, joints and junctions.</p> <p>Where required by this Acceptable Solution, the <i>cladding system</i> shall include a <i>drained cavity</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Cladding system The weatherproof wall or <i>roof</i> enclosure of a <i>building</i>, including underlays, <i>claddings</i> and their fixings, windows, doors and all penetrations, <i>flashings</i>, seals, joints and junctions.</p>	Simple House
<p>Classified use means a <i>classified use</i> listed in clause A1 of the <i>Building Code</i>.</p>	BR1
<p>Cleaning eye A small <i>diameter access point</i> usually formed as part of a fitting or trap.</p>	CD-G13

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>Cleared ground level (CGL) The <i>ground level</i> after completion of site excavation and removal of all harmful material, but before excavation for <i>foundations</i>.</p>	Simple House
<p>Code compliance certificate means a certificate issued by a <i>building consent authority</i> under section 95 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Combined waste pipe A <i>discharge pipe</i> which serves two or more <i>waste pipes</i>.</p>	CD-G13
<p>Combustible See <i>non-combustible</i>.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C
<p>Combustion appliance A slow combustion stove, a free standing metal cone fireplace, a cast iron pot belly stove, an oil burning space heater, or a vented gas burning heater.</p>	Code
<p>Common extract duct A mechanical ventilation duct that extracts from different household units, and may contain air, moisture and contaminant.</p>	CD-G4
<p>Common ramp A ramp which is used, or intended to be used by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a <i>service ramp</i> or <i>accessible ramp</i>.</p>	CD-D1
<p>Common stairway A <i>stairway</i> which is used, or intended to be used, by the public whether as of right or not, and is not a <i>private stairway</i>, <i>service stairway</i> or <i>accessible stairway</i>.</p>	CD-D1
<p>Compliance document has the meaning given to it by section 22 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p> <p>Section 22 states:</p> <p>“22. Compliance document for use in establishing compliance with Building Code —</p> <p>(1) The chief executive may, by notice in the Gazette, issue a document for use in establishing compliance with the Building Code (a Compliance Document).</p> <p>(2) A person who complies with a Compliance Document must, for the purposes of this Act, be treated as having complied with the provisions of the Building Code to which the document relates.</p> <p>(3) Subsection (2) is subject to any regulations referred to in section 20”.</p>	BA04
<p>Compliance schedule means a <i>compliance schedule</i> required under section 100 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Compliance schedule statement means a statement issued by a <i>territorial or regional authority</i> referred to in section 105(e) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	HB
<p>Concealed space Any part of the space within a <i>building</i> that cannot be seen from an <i>occupied space</i>.</p>	Code
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>This term includes any ceiling space, roof space, space under a raised floor (such as computer rooms, floors, or stages), plenums, spaces under a tiered floor, “left-over spaces” created when some structural element or the like has been covered in; small service or duct spaces within the volume of a <i>firecell</i> and the like, but not a <i>protected shaft</i>.</p>	
<p>Concrete slab shrinkage control joint A line along which the horizontal strength of the slab is deliberately reduced so that any shrinkage in the slab will result in a crack forming along that line.</p>	Simple House

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
Department means the Department of Building and Housing.	HB
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Department of Conservation means the department of State established by section 5 of the Conservation Act 1987.	Code
Determination means a determination made by the Chief Executive under subpart 1 of Part 3 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
Developed length The total length along the centre line of a pipe including fittings and bends.	CD-G13
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Diagonal brace A member of a framed <i>building</i> fixed diagonally and used to resist tension or compression or both.	Simple House
Diameter (or bore) The nominal internal <i>diameter</i> .	CD-G12, CD-G13
Direct fixed A term used to describe a wall <i>cladding</i> attached directly to the wall <i>framing</i> , without the use of a <i>drained cavity</i> .	CD-E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Director-General has the same meaning as in section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987.	Code
Discharge pipe Any pipe that is intended to convey discharge from <i>sanitary fixtures</i> or <i>sanitary appliances</i> .	CD-G13
Discharge stack A <i>discharge pipe</i> that has one or more <i>discharge pipe</i> connections, and which is vented at one end via a <i>discharge stack vent</i> .	CD-G13
Discharge stack vent A <i>vent pipe</i> connected to the top of the <i>discharge stack</i> .	CD-G13
Discharge unit The unit of measure for the discharge (hydraulic load) in the <i>plumbing system</i> , and is based on the rate, duration and frequency of discharge from a <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> .	CD-G13
Doorset A complete assembly comprising a door leaf or leaves including any glazed or solid panels adjacent to or over the leaves within the door frame including hardware or other inbuilt features; and a door frame, if any, with its fixings to the wall and, for a sliding or tilting door, all guides and their respective fixings to the lintel, wall or sill.	CD-C, CD-F8
Dormer or dormer window A framed structure that projects from a sloping roof, and has a window at its outer end.	CD-E2
Drain A pipe normally laid below ground level including fittings and equipment and intended to convey <i>foul water</i> or <i>surface water</i> to an <i>outfall</i> .	Code
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Drained cavity A cavity space, immediately behind a wall <i>cladding</i> , that has vents at the base of the wall. Also known as a drained and vented cavity and referred to in E2/AS1 as a cavity or <i>drained cavity</i> .	CD-E2
A <i>drained cavity</i> assists drying by allowing water which occasionally penetrates the wall <i>cladding system</i> to drain to the exterior of the <i>building</i> , and any remaining moisture to dry by evaporation. Where E2/AS1 requires a nominal 20 mm <i>drained cavity</i> , the depth shall be between limits of 18 mm and 25 mm. For definition of masonry veneer cavity refer to SNZ HB 4236.	
Drain vent pipe Any pipe which is intended to permit the movement of air into and out of the <i>drain</i> and <i>sewer</i> .	CD-G13

Definition	Source
Draught diverter A device, without moving parts, fitted in the <i>flue</i> of an appliance for isolating the combustion system from the effects of pressure changes in the secondary <i>flue</i> .	CD-G4, CD-C
Drip edge Fold(s) applied to the edge of a horizontal metal <i>flashing</i> to deflect moisture away from the <i>cladding system</i> below. Refer also <i>Bird's beak</i> and <i>Kick-out</i> .	CD-E2
Durable Resistant to wear and decay.	CD-B2
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Dwang A short (usually horizontal) member fixed between vertical <i>framing</i> timbers. Also known as noggling.	CD-E2
E	
Early childhood centre A facility used for the education or care of children under the age of six, and required to be licensed under the Education (Early Childhood Centres) Regulations 1998.	CD-C
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Eaves That part of the roof <i>construction</i> , including <i>cladding</i> , fascia and eaves gutter (spouting), that extends beyond the exterior face of the wall.	CD-E2
Eaves bearer or soffit bearer or sprocket A horizontal member attached to the end of a truss or a <i>rafter</i> and to a <i>stud</i> , or a ribbon board, or a soffit plate, and to which the <i>eaves lining</i> is attached.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010 EPDM Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer – a thermosetting synthetic rubber. See butyl rubber .	Simple House
EIFS (Exterior Insulation and Finish System) A polystyrene sheet-based <i>cladding system</i> that uses mesh reinforced polymer-modified cement-based or polymer-based plaster base coats and a protective top coating.	CD-E2
Electrical fixed appliance An electrical appliance which is fixed-wired to the <i>electrical installation</i> , or intended to remain permanently attached and form part of the <i>building</i> .	Code
Electrical installation Any <i>electrical fixed appliances</i> and components used in the reticulation of electricity, which are intended to remain permanently attached to and form part of the <i>building</i> .	Code
Electrical supply system The source of electricity external to the <i>electrical installation</i> .	Code
Electrolytic corrosion Galvanic corrosion commonly resulting from the contact of two dissimilar metals when an electrolyte such as water is present.	CD-E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Enclosed balustrade A timber-framed barrier with <i>cladding</i> across all exposed faces. Refer also Parapet.	CD-E2
Enclosed deck A <i>deck</i> , whether over an interior or exterior space, that has an impermeable upper surface and is closed on the underside. May also be known as a balcony.	CD-E2
Energy work means—	BA04
(a) gasfitting; or	
(b) prescribed electrical work	

Definition	Source
Energy work certificate means a certificate of the kind referred to in section 19(1)(e) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
Envelope complexity The categorisation of the complexity of the total <i>building</i> envelope into one of four classes, depending on the particular features of the <i>building</i> as specified in E2/AS1.	CD-E2
EPDM (Ethylene Propylene Diene Monomer) A thermosetting synthetic rubber used as a resilient part of a sealing washer, or as a roof <i>membrane</i> .	CD-E2
Equivalent aerodynamic area The area of an equivalent aerodynamically perfect orifice, and equals the penetration area required by the natural ventilation device multiplied by the discharge coefficient determined under test.	CD-G4
Escape height The height between the floor level in the <i>firecell</i> being considered and the floor level of the required <i>final exit</i> which is the greatest vertical distance above or below that <i>firecell</i> .	CD-C, CD-F3 CD-F6
COMMENT:	
1. It is necessary only to use the greatest height to the exits required for the <i>firecell</i> being considered, even though the <i>building</i> may have other <i>final exits</i> at lower or higher levels.	
2. Where the <i>firecell</i> contains <i>intermediate floors</i> , or upper floors within <i>household units</i> the <i>escape height</i> shall be measured from the floor having the greatest vertical separation from the <i>final exit</i> .	
Escape route A continuous unobstructed route from any <i>occupied space</i> in a <i>building</i> to a <i>final exit</i> to enable occupants to reach a <i>safe place</i> , and shall comprise one or more of the following: <i>open paths</i> , <i>protected paths</i> and <i>safe paths</i> .	Code
COMMENT:	
Doors are not obstructions in an <i>escape route</i> provided they comply with C/AS1 Part 3 and D1/AS1.	
Essential service In the context of an <i>electrical installation</i> means emergency lighting, firemen's lifts, alarms, water pumps, sprinklers, detectors, ventilation systems and public address systems necessary for the safety of people in <i>buildings</i> .	Code
Estimated value in relation to <i>building work</i> , means the estimated aggregate of the values, determined in accordance with section 10 of the Goods and Services Tax Act 1985, of all goods and services to be supplied for the <i>building work</i> .	BA04
Evacuation time The time taken by the occupants of the <i>building</i> to evacuate the <i>building</i> to a <i>final exit</i> .	Code
Exitway All parts of an <i>escape route</i> protected by <i>fire</i> or <i>smoke separations</i> , or by distance when exposed to open air, and terminating at a <i>final exit</i> .	Code
Expansion joint A joint designed to prevent damage by accommodating movement. See also <i>Control joint</i> .	CD-E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
------------	--------

External wall Any exterior face of a *building* within 30° of vertical, consisting of *primary* and/or *secondary elements* intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment, but which may also contain *unprotected areas*.

Code

COMMENT:

A roof is an *external wall* if within 30° of the vertical.

Amend 11
Sep 2010

External wall An outer wall of a *building*.

Simple House

Amend 12
Oct 2011

External wall Any vertical exterior face of a *building* consisting of *primary* and/or *secondary elements* intended to provide protection against the outdoor environment.

CD-E2

F

Factor of safety in relation to any *building* means the ratio of resisting forces to applied forces for a given loading condition. It is generally expressed to two significant figures.

CD-B1

Falsework, in relation to *building work* or the maintenance of a *building*,—`

BA04

(a) means any temporary structure or framework used to support materials, equipment, or an assembly; and

(b) includes steel tubes, adjustable steel props, proprietary frames, or other means used to support a permanent structure until it becomes self-supporting; but

(c) does not include scaffolding or cranes used for support.

Final exit The point at which an *escape route* terminates by giving direct access to a *safe place*.

Code

COMMENT:

Final exits are commonly the external doors from a ground floor, but this applies only if such doors open directly onto a *safe place*. If a *safe place* can be reached only by passing down an alley, or across a bridge, then the *final exit* is not reached until the end of such an alley or bridge. *Final exits*, therefore, should be seen strictly as a point of arrival, rather than as any particular element of a *building*. They are determined entirely by the definition of *safe place*.

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Finished ground level (FGL) The level of the ground against any part of a *building* after all backfilling and/or landscaping and/or surface paving has been completed.

CD-E2

Fire The state of combustion during which flammable materials burn producing heat, toxic gases, or smoke or flame or any combination of these.

Code

Firecell Any space including a group of contiguous spaces on the same or different levels within a *building*, which is enclosed by any combination of *fire separations*, *external walls*, roofs, and floors.

Code

COMMENT:

Floors, in this context, includes ground floors and those in which the underside is exposed to the external environment (eg, when cantilevered). Note also that internal floors between *firecells* are *fire separations*.

Firecell rating (F) The *fire resistance rating (FRR)* intended to prevent *fire* spread to another *firecell*, for sufficient time to provide for safe evacuation of occupants and protection of adjacent *housing units* and sleeping areas in the *building* of *fire* origin and fire fighters engaged in fire fighting and rescue operations.

CD-C

Definition	Source
Forced or induced draught appliance An appliance where all or part of the air for combustion is provided by a fan or other mechanical device which is an integral part of the combustion system.	CD-G4
Former Act means the Building Act 1991.	BA04
Foul water The discharge from any <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> .	Code
Foul water drainage system <i>Drains</i> , joints and fittings normally laid underground and used specifically for the conveyance of water from the <i>plumbing system</i> to an <i>outfall</i> .	Code
Foundation Those parts of a <i>building</i> transmitting and distributing loads to the ground through a <i>footing</i> .	Simple House
Framing Timber members to which <i>lining</i> , <i>cladding</i> , flooring, or decking is attached; or which are depended upon for supporting the structure, or for resisting forces applied to it.	CD-E2
Free outlet (push through) In the context of <i>storage water heaters</i> means a <i>water heater</i> with a tap on the cold water inlet so designed that the hot water is discharged through an open outlet.	CD-G12
Functional requirements in relation to a <i>building</i> , means those functions which a <i>building</i> is to perform for the purposes of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04
G	
Gable Triangular part of an <i>external wall</i> between the planes of the <i>roof</i> and the line of the <i>eaves</i> .	Simple House
Galvanised steel flashings Galvanised steel <i>flashings</i> shall be:	Simple House
(a) <i>BMT</i> of 0.55 mm minimum for <i>flashings</i> generally	
(b) <i>BMT</i> of 0.4 mm minimum for roll-formed roll-top ridge <i>flashings</i>	
(c) Hot-dipped zinc coated Z275 with a factory-applied finish that complies with AS/NZS 2728 Type 4, and in Sea Spray and corrosion Zone 1 the factory-applied finish shall be Type 5 minimum.	
Gantry A structure covering a public way providing protection from both the side and overhead.	CD-F5
Gasfitting has the meaning given to it by section 2 of the Plumbers, Gasfitters, and Drainlayers Act 1976.	BA04/PGDA
Section 2 states:	
“(a) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) beyond the outlet of any gas measurement system supplying a consumer or gas refueller with gas (or, where there is no such gas measurement system, beyond the custody transfer point of the place at which gas is supplied to a consumer or gas refueller):	
(b) The work of fixing or unfixing pipes (including flue and ventilation pipes) that convey gas from any gas storage container in the possession or control of a consumer or gas refueller, and—	

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition

Source

- (i) In the case of liquefied petroleum gas, that are downstream of the first regulator beyond that container; or
- (ii) In the case of any other gas or where there is no such regulator (in the case of liquefied petroleum gas), that are downstream of the outlet valve of the container:
- (c) The work of fixing or unfixing the whole or part of the control system of any gas appliance—
but does not include—
- (d) Work on any gas storage container, including its fixing or unfixing; or
- (e) Work on any gas transmission system or distribution system; or
- (f) Work on any pipes or fittings supplied with liquefied petroleum gas from any gas storage container or containers that contains, or together contain, less than 15 kilograms net weight of liquefied petroleum gas; or
- (g) Work in any circumstances where the exclusions in section 3(2) of the Gas Act 1992 apply:]”

Gather That part of a *chimney* where the transition from *fireplace* to stack occurs.

CD-B1

Good ground means any soil or rock capable of permanently withstanding an ultimate bearing pressure of 300 kPa (i.e. an allowable bearing pressure of 100 kPa using a *factor of safety* of 3.0), but excludes:

CD-B1

- (a) Potentially compressible ground such as topsoil, soft soils such as clay which can be moulded easily in the fingers, and uncompacted loose gravel which contains obvious voids,
- (b) Expansive soils being those that have a liquid limit of more than 50% when tested in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.2, and a linear shrinkage of more than 15% when tested, from the liquid limit, in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 2.6, and
- (c) Any ground which could foreseeably experience movement of 25 mm or greater for any reason including one or a combination of: land instability, ground creep, subsidence, (liquefaction, lateral spread – for the *Canterbury earthquake region* only), seasonal swelling and shrinking, frost heave, changing ground water level, erosion, dissolution of soil in water, and effects of tree roots.

Amend 12
Oct 2011

COMMENT:

Soils (excepting those described in (a), (b) and (c) above) tested with a dynamic cone penetrometer in accordance with NZS 4402 Test 6.5.2, shall be acceptable as *good ground* for *building* foundations if penetration resistance is no less than:

- (a) 3 blows per 75 mm at depths no greater than the footing width.
- (b) 2 blows per 75 mm at depths greater than the footing width.

Depths shall be measured from the underside of the proposed footing.

Definition	Source
<p>Means of escape from fire, in relation to a <i>building</i> that has a floor area,—</p> <p>(a) means continuous unobstructed routes of travel from any part of the floor area of that <i>building</i> to a place of safety, and</p> <p>(b) includes all active and passive protection features required to warn people of <i>fire</i> and to assist in protecting people from the effects of <i>fire</i> in the course of their escape from the <i>fire</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Member span The clear distance between supports, measured along the member.</p>	Simple House
<p>Membrane A non-metallic material, usually synthetic, used as a fully supported roof <i>cladding</i>, <i>deck</i> surface or, in conjunction with other <i>claddings</i>, as gutters or <i>flashings</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Minister means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of a warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is responsible for the administration of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>Minor private stairway A <i>private stairway</i> not on a main thoroughfare, and intended to provide infrequent access to a single room which is not a living area or kitchen.</p>	CD-D1
<p>MSG Machine stress graded refers to timber that is initially sorted by machine, calibrated to NZS 3603. See also VSG.</p>	Simple House
<p>Multi-unit dwelling Applies to a <i>building</i> or use which contains more than one separate household or family.</p>	CD-C
<p>COMMENT: For fire safety purposes each <i>household unit</i> is a separate <i>firecell</i>.</p>	
<p>N</p>	
<p>Natural draught The flow produced by the tendency of warmed gases to rise.</p>	CD-G4
<p>Natural hazard has the meaning given to it by section 71 of the Building Act 2004.</p> <p>Section 71(3) states:</p> <p>“(3) In this section and sections 72 to 74, natural hazard means any of the following:</p> <p>(a) erosion (including coastal erosion, bank erosion, and sheet erosion):</p> <p>(b) falling debris (including soil, rock, snow, and ice):</p> <p>(c) subsidence:</p> <p>(d) inundation (including flooding, overland flow, storm surge, tidal effects, and ponding):</p> <p>(e) slippage.”</p>	BA04
<p>Net openable area is the area of windows or doors or other opening measured on the face dimensions of the openable building element concerned.</p>	CD-G4

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
<p>Network utility operator means a person who—</p> <p>(a) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution or transmission by pipeline of natural or manufactured gas, petroleum, biofuel, or geothermal energy; or</p> <p>(b) operates or proposes to operate a network for the purpose of—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(i) telecommunication as defined in section 5 of the Telecommunications Act 2001; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(ii) radiocommunications as defined in section 2(1) of the Radiocommunications Act 1989; or</p> <p>(c) is an electricity operator or electricity distributor as defined in section 2 of the Electricity Act 1992 for the purpose of line function services as defined in that section; or</p> <p>(d) undertakes or proposes to undertake the distribution of water for supply (including irrigation); or</p> <p>(e) undertakes or proposes to undertake a drainage or sewerage system</p>	BA04
<p>Amend 12 Oct 2011</p>	
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p>Nogging See dwang</p>	Simple House CD-B1
<p>Nominal pile width The least width of a pile in side view and is equal to the diameter in round piles.</p>	CD-B1, CD-C
<p>Non-combustible Materials shall be classified as <i>non-combustible</i> or <i>combustible</i> when tested to: AS 1530 – Part 1.</p>	Simple House Simple House CD-G12
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p> <p>Non-loadbearing stud A stud in a <i>non-loadbearing wall</i>.</p> <p>Non-loadbearing wall A wall other than a <i>loadbearing wall</i>.</p>	CD-D1, CD-F4
<p>Non-return valve A valve that permits flow in one direction but prevents a return flow and is part of a hot or cold water system.</p>	BA04
<p>Nosing The rounded projecting edge of a stair tread.</p>	CD-C
<p>Notice to fix has the meaning given to it by section 164(2) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i>.</p> <p>Section 164(2) states:</p> <p>“(2) A responsible authority must issue to the specified person concerned a notice (a notice to fix) requiring the person—</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(a) to remedy the contravention of, or to comply with, this Act or the regulations; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(b) to correct the warrant of fitness; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">(c) to properly comply with the inspection, maintenance, or reporting procedures stated in the compliance schedule.”</p>	CD-C
<p>Notional boundary The <i>boundary</i> which for <i>fire</i> safety purposes, is assumed to exist between two <i>buildings</i> on the same property under a single land title.</p>	CD-C
<p>COMMENT:</p> <p>A <i>notional boundary</i> may be located anywhere between the two <i>buildings</i> on the same property. It is not fixed and for the purposes of calculating permitted unprotected areas of each <i>building</i> it can be moved towards the other <i>building</i> thus maximising the permitted <i>unprotected area</i>.</p>	
<p>Amend 11 Sep 2010</p>	
<p>Amend 12 Oct 2011</p> <p>NUO system means a system owned or controlled by a <i>network utility operator</i>.</p>	BA04
<p>NZBC New Zealand Building Code.</p>	CD-E2

Definition	Source
O	
<p>Occupant load The greatest number of people likely to occupy a particular space within a <i>building</i>. It is determined by:</p> <p>(a) Multiplying the number of people per m² (occupant density) for the activity being undertaken, by the total floor area, or</p> <p>(b) For sleeping areas, counting the number of beds, or</p> <p>(c) For fixed seating areas, counting the number of seats.</p>	CD-C, CD-F6, CD-F7
<p>Occupied space Any space within a <i>building</i> in which a <i>person</i> will be present from time to time during the <i>intended use</i> of the <i>building</i>.</p>	Code
<p>Open path That part of an <i>escape route</i> (including <i>dead ends</i>) not protected by <i>fire</i> or <i>smoke separations</i>, and which terminates at a <i>final exit</i> or <i>exitway</i>.</p>	Code
<p>Open space includes land on which there is and will be no <i>buildings</i> and which has no roof over any part of it other than overhanging eaves.</p>	CD-C
<p>Open vented storage water heater A <i>water heater</i> incorporating a <i>vent pipe</i> which is permanently open to the atmosphere.</p>	CD-G12
<p>Other property—</p> <p>(a) means any land or <i>buildings</i>, or part of any land or <i>buildings</i>, that are—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) not held under the same <i>allotment</i>; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) not held under the same ownership; and</p> <p>(b) includes a road</p>	BA04
<p>Outdoor air Air as typically comprising by volume:</p> <p>(i) oxygen 20.94%</p> <p>(ii) carbon dioxide 0.03%</p> <p>(iii) nitrogen and other inert gases 79.03%.</p>	Code
<p>Outfall That part of the disposal system receiving <i>surface water</i> or <i>foul water</i> from the drainage system. For <i>foul water</i>, the <i>outfall</i> may include a <i>sewer</i> or a septic tank. For <i>surface water</i>, the <i>outfall</i> may include a natural water course, kerb and channel, or soakage system.</p>	Code
<p>Over-pressure protection Devices preventing the pressure in piping or appliances from exceeding a predetermined value.</p>	CD-G11
<p>Owner, in relation to land and any <i>buildings</i> on the land,—</p> <p>(a) means the <i>person</i> who—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) is entitled to the rack rent from the land; or</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) would be so entitled if the land were let to a tenant at a rack rent; and</p> <p>(b) includes—</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(i) the <i>owner</i> of the fee simple of the land; and</p> <p style="margin-left: 20px;">(ii) any <i>person</i> who has agreed in writing, whether conditionally or unconditionally, to purchase the land or any leasehold estate or interest in the land or to take a lease of the land and who is bound by the agreement because the agreement is still in force.</p>	BA04

Definition	Source
P	
Parallel flashing A roof <i>flashing</i> that runs along the roof slope, parallel to the roof <i>cladding</i> profile. Also known as a longitudinal <i>flashing</i> .	CD-E2
Parapet A timber-framed wall that extends above the level of the roof <i>cladding</i> . Refer also Enclosed balustrade.	CD-E2
Passive stack ventilator A system including a ventilation shaft which uses natural draught to ventilate spaces.	CD-G4
Penetration A pipe, cable or duct passing through an opening in a <i>fire separation</i> .	CD-C
Penstocks are conduits to control the flow of water in water supply, hydroelectric power and sewerage systems. Penstocks are normally equipped with a gate system and surge tank.	DG
People with disabilities People whose ability to use <i>buildings</i> is affected by mental, physical, hearing or sight impairment.	Code
Performance criteria in relation to a <i>building</i> , means those qualitative or quantitative criteria that the <i>building</i> is required to satisfy in performing its <i>functional requirement</i> .	BA04
Permanent opening An opening which cannot be closed, this implies that doors, windows etc are NOT permanent openings, although door undercuts are.	CD-G4
Person includes—	BA04
(a) the Crown; and	
(b) a corporation sole; and	
(c) a body of persons (whether corporate or unincorporate)	
Person with a disability means a <i>person</i> who has an impairment or a combination of impairments that limits the extent to which the <i>person</i> can engage in the activities, pursuits, and processes of everyday life, including, without limitation, any of the following:	BA04
(a) a physical, sensory, neurological, or intellectual impairment:	
(b) a mental illness.	
Piping system An assembly of pipes, pipe fittings, gaskets, bolting and pipe supports.	CD-G14
Pitch line The line joining the leading edge or <i>nosings</i> (if any) of successive stair treads within a single flight of <i>stairs</i> .	CD-F4 (Sep 07)
Plans and specifications—	BA04
(a) means the drawings, specifications, and other documents according to which a <i>building</i> is proposed to be <i>constructed, altered, demolished, or removed</i> ; and	
(b) includes the proposed procedures for inspection during the <i>construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building</i> ; and	
(c) in the case of the <i>construction or alteration of a building</i> , also includes—	
(i) the <i>intended use of the building</i> ; and	
(ii) the <i>specified systems</i> that the applicant for <i>building consent</i> considers will be required to be included in a <i>compliance schedule</i> required under section 100; and	

Definition	Source
(iii) the proposed procedures for inspection and routine maintenance for the purposes of the <i>compliance schedule</i> for those <i>specified systems</i> .	
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Plate A timber member supported by a <i>foundation</i> or <i>studs</i> to support and distribute the load from floors, walls, <i>roofs</i> or ceilings. See bottom plate, top plate .	Simple House
Plumbing system Pipes, joints and fittings laid above ground and used for the conveyance of <i>foul water</i> to the <i>foul water drain</i> , and includes <i>vent pipes</i> .	Code
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Post An isolated vertical member acting as a support.	Simple House
Potable (and potable water) Water that is suitable for human consumption.	CD-G12
Potential impact classification is related to the consequence (effects) of the <i>dam</i> failing, if it should release its stored contents. Consequences include loss of life, socio-economic, financial and environmental.	DG
Prescribed electrical work has the meaning given to it by section 2(1) of the Electricity Act 1992.	BA04, EA
Primary element A <i>building element</i> providing the basic load bearing capacity to the structure, and which if affected by <i>fire</i> may initiate instability or premature structural collapse.	CD-B2, CD-C
COMMENT: Suspended floors in multi-storey <i>buildings</i> are <i>primary elements</i> .	
Principal user A member of the primary group for which a <i>building</i> was constructed, and therefore explicitly excludes <i>persons</i> or groups of <i>persons</i> providing care or control of that <i>principal user</i> group.	Code
Privacy The situation of being withdrawn from view.	CD-G1
Private stairway A <i>stairway</i> used, or intended to be used, by the occupants of a single <i>household unit</i> .	CD-D1
Privy A private room containing a receptacle (other than a WC) or an excavation for excreted liquid or solid human waste, and with a means of disposal or containment of the waste.	CD-G1
Producer statements are formal statements supplied by or on behalf of (i) an applicant for a <i>building consent</i> , or (ii) by or on behalf of a <i>person</i> who has carried out <i>building work</i> . that can be accepted by a <i>building consent authority</i> as verification that certain work will be or has been carried out in accordance with nominated performance requirements of the <i>Building Code</i> .	HB
COMMENT: Although no longer expressly referred to in the <i>Building Act 2004</i> , these could be accepted and considered as part of the plans or specifications.	
Product certificate means a certificate issued under section 269 of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> that a <i>building consent authority</i> must accept as establishing compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> .	HB
Product certification accreditation body means the <i>person</i> referred to in section 261(2) of the <i>Building Act 2004</i> .	BA04

Definition	Source
Property includes land, <i>buildings</i> , and goods; but does not include incorporeal forms of <i>property</i> .	BA04
<p>Proprietary fasteners <i>Proprietary fasteners</i> may be used where the fixing <i>capacity</i> of fixings are specifically identified in this [SH/AS1] <i>Acceptable Solution</i>.</p> <p>Manufacturers of a timber connector or fixing shall provide the following information on each package of fixings, or on a securely attached label:</p> <p>(a) the name, or registered trade name, or make and address of manufacturer</p> <p>(b) the materials used in manufacture including fasteners and corrosion protection</p> <p>(c) the load capacity of the timber connector or fixing in kN determined in accordance with the following equation:</p> $R = \varphi \times Q_k \times n \times k$ <p>Where:</p> <p>R = connector capacity in kN</p> <p>φ = capacity reduction factor from NZS 3603</p> <p>Q_k = characteristic value obtained by test in accordance with BRANZ Evaluation Method EM1 or AS/NZS 2699: Part 2 as appropriate</p> <p>n = number of tested elements making up the complete joint</p> <p>k = modification factors from NZS 3603 (Section 4) as appropriate to specific application.</p> <p>(d) fastener's requirements</p> <p>(e) details of <i>intended use</i></p> <p>(f) durability in accordance with Paragraph 2.5.4.</p>	Simple House
Protected path That portion of an <i>exitway</i> within a <i>firecell</i> which is protected from the effects of smoke by <i>smoke separations</i> .	Code
Protected shaft A space, other than a <i>safe path</i> , enclosed by <i>fire separations</i> or <i>external walls</i> used to house <i>building services</i> , lifts, or conveyors which pass from one <i>firecell</i> to another.	CD-C
Purlin A horizontal member laid to span across <i>rafters</i> or trusses, and to which the roof <i>cladding</i> is attached.	CD-E2
Purlin Includes tile batten . A horizontal member laid to span across <i>rafters</i> or trusses and to which the <i>roof cladding</i> is attached.	Simple House
Purpose group The classification of spaces within a <i>building</i> according to the activity for which the spaces are used.	Code

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
COMMENT:	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Where an easement, such as a right of way, occurs within an <i>allotment</i>, the <i>relevant boundary</i> shall remain the same as if the easement did not exist. 2. <i>Boundaries</i> within a cross-lease or company lease or licence are shown on a survey plan. In some cases the <i>boundary</i> is the <i>external wall</i> or roof of a <i>building</i>. 3. The unit title <i>boundaries</i> of principal units, accessory units, and common property are shown in the unit plan. A <i>boundary</i> is frequently an internal or <i>external wall</i>, an upper floor, or the roof of a <i>building</i>. 4. A wall along a <i>boundary</i> between two <i>allotments</i> is called a "party wall" when the <i>owners</i> of the <i>allotments</i> each have legal rights in respect of that wall registered by way of easements on one or both titles. An internal wall between cross-leases, company leases, or unit titles, or between one of them and common property, is not generally called a party wall but in that case also the lessees, unit title holders, or corporate body concerned each have legal rights in respect of that wall. Such a wall separates areas which are <i>other property</i> in relation to each other, but the wall itself is part of each property. The <i>fire</i> protection consequence of that legal concept is that such a wall can be regarded as a <i>fire separation</i> providing protection against horizontal <i>fire</i> spread in each direction. In other words, that wall may provide the appropriate <i>FRR</i> instead of each property having its own wall of that <i>FRR</i>. 	
Relief vent A <i>vent pipe</i> which is connected to a <i>discharge stack</i> below the lowest branch connection and which connects at its upper end to the <i>discharge stack vent</i> or terminates as an open vent.	CD-G13
Reservoir Body of water impounded by one or more <i>dams</i> or dikes, inclusive of its shores and banks and of any facility or installation necessary for its operation.	DG
Ribbon board Includes soffit plate . A horizontal <i>framing</i> timber secured to, or checked into, the edges of <i>studs</i> and supporting <i>eaves bearers</i> .	Simple House
Ridge beam A single beam that supports <i>rafters</i> of a <i>skillion roof</i> .	Simple House
Risk group A , for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means <i>buildings</i> —	Code
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) whose occupants are required to remain in the <i>building</i> until the main lighting system is restored; or (b) whose <i>evacuation time</i> is longer than 90 minutes. 	
Risk group B , for the purposes of performance F6.3.4 and performance F6.3.5, means <i>buildings</i> —	Code
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> (a) whose <i>evacuation time</i> is 30 minutes or longer but not longer than 90 minutes; or (b) whose occupant load is more than 1 000. 	
Risk group C , for the purposes of performance F6.3.4, means <i>buildings</i> not in <i>risk group A</i> or <i>risk group B</i> .	Code
Reservoir capacity Total or gross storage capacity of the <i>reservoir</i> at full supply level.	DG
Risk matrix A table that allows the calculation of a <i>risk score</i> by the allocation and summing of scores for a range of design and location factors applying to a specific <i>building</i> design.	CD-E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010

	Definition	Source
	Risk score An aggregated numerical score for a proposed <i>building</i> as defined by E2/AS1. The <i>risk score</i> is determined by completion of the <i>risk matrix</i> .	CD-E2
	Road has the meaning ascribed to it by section 315 of the Local Government Act 1974 and includes a public place and also includes a motorway.	CD-C/LGA
	Rodding point A removable cap at ground level through which access may be made for cleaning and inspecting the drainage system.	CD-E1, CD-G13
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Roof That part of a <i>building</i> having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of 60° or less to the horizontal.	CD-E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Roof That part of the <i>building</i> having its upper surface exposed to the outside and at an angle of between 10° and 35° to the horizontal. See skillion roof .	Simple House
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Roof underlay An absorbent permeable building paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water in association with <i>roof cladding</i> performance.	CD-E2
	Roof underlay An absorbent, permeable paper that absorbs or collects condensation or water that may penetrate the <i>roof cladding</i> . The <i>roof underlay</i> shall have the properties in Table 23 of the <i>Acceptable Solution</i> E2/AS1 for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture: (a) absorbency of 100 g/m ² or greater (b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less (c) water resistance of 100 mm or greater (d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0 (e) shrinkage no more than 0.5% (f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Room-sealed appliance An appliance designed so that air for combustion neither enters from, nor combustion products enter into, the room in which the appliance is located.	CD-G4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Running bonds , See bond	Simple House
S		
	Saddle flashing A <i>flashing</i> used to weatherproof the junction between a horizontal and vertical surface.	CD-E2
	Safe path That part of an <i>exitway</i> which is protected from the effects of <i>fire</i> by <i>fire separations</i> , <i>external walls</i> , or by distance when exposed to open air.	Code
	Safe place A place of safety in the vicinity of a <i>building</i> , from which people may safely disperse after escaping the effects of a <i>fire</i> . It may be a place such as a street, <i>open space</i> , public space or an <i>adjacent building</i> .	Code
	Safety colour (green, red or yellow) A colour of specified properties to which a safety meaning is attributed.	CD-F8
	Safety glass means a glass so treated or combined with other materials as to reduce the likelihood of injury to <i>persons</i> when it is cracked or broken.	CD-F2

Definition	Source
Safety shut-off system An arrangement of valves and associated control systems which shuts off the supply of gas when required by a device which senses an unsafe condition.	CD-G10
Safety sign A particular type of sign which comprises a geometric form and a <i>safety colour</i> , together with a <i>safety symbol</i> or text (that is, words, letters, numbers or a combination of these) and gives a particular safety message.	CD-F8
Safety symbol means a graphic symbol used in a <i>safety sign</i> .	CD-F8
Sanitary appliance An appliance which is intended to be used for <i>sanitation</i> , but which is not a <i>sanitary fixture</i> . Included are machines for washing dishes and clothes.	Code
Sanitary fixture Any <i>fixture</i> which is intended to be used for <i>sanitation</i> .	Code
Sanitation The term used to describe the activities of washing and/or excretion carried out in a manner or condition such that the effect on health is minimised, with regard to dirt and infection.	Code
Scaffolding used in the course of the <i>construction</i> process, means any structure, framework, swinging stage, suspended <i>scaffolding</i> , or boatswain's chair, that is of a temporary nature and that is used or intended to be used for: the support or protection of workers engaged in, or in connection with <i>construction</i> work for the purpose of carrying out that work, or the support of materials used in connection with the work; and includes any plank, coupling, fastening, fitting, or device used in connection with the <i>construction</i> , erection, or use of <i>scaffolding</i> .	BA04
Scupper An opening in a <i>parapet</i> or <i>enclosed balustrade</i> to allow water to drain into a rainwater head.	CD-E2
Sealant A flexible neutral cure sealant for gap filling and weatherproofing that complies with: (a) Type F, Class 20 LM or 25 LM of ISO 11600, or (b) low modulus Type II Class A of Federal Specification TT-S-00230C.	Simple House
Secondary element A <i>building element</i> not providing load bearing capacity to the structure and if affected by <i>fire</i> , instability or collapse of the <i>building</i> structure will not occur.	CD-B2, CD-C
Secondary flow path The path over which <i>surface water</i> will follow if the drainage system becomes overloaded or inoperative.	CD-E1
Secondary private stairway A <i>private stairway</i> other than a <i>main</i> or <i>minor private stairway</i> , intended to provide access to another floor containing only bedrooms, bathroom or similar accommodation.	CD-D1
Service ramp means a ramp that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.	CD-D1
Service stairway means a <i>stairway</i> that is used, or intended to be used, infrequently by service personnel to gain access to spaces for the purposes of maintenance and the movement of goods.	CD-D1
Sewer A <i>drain</i> that is under the control of, or maintained by, a <i>network utility operator</i> .	Code

Amend 11
Sep 2010

	Definition	Source
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Sill support bar A bar or mechanism complying with EM6, E2/VM1 tests, and Clause B2 of the <i>Building Code</i> , and used to support the weight of aluminium window and door joinery that is installed over drained cavities.	CD-E2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Simple house A house that is described in Section 1 of this [SH/AS1] <i>Acceptable Solution</i> .	Simple House
	Sitework means work on a <i>building</i> site, including earthworks, preparatory to, or associated with the <i>construction, alteration, demolition, or removal of a building</i> .	BA04
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Skillion roof A pitched <i>roof</i> where the ceiling <i>lining</i> is parallel and close to the <i>roof cladding</i> . The <i>roof</i> may be mono-pitch or may consist of more than one <i>roof</i> plane. These <i>roofs</i> may have <i>rafters</i> exposed below the ceiling.	Simple House
	Smokecell A space within a <i>building</i> which is enclosed by an envelope of <i>smoke separations, or external walls, roofs, and floors</i> .	CD-C
	Smoke control door A <i>doorset</i> with closefitting single or multi-leaves which are impermeable to the passage of smoke, fitted with smoke seals and installed within a <i>smoke separation</i> . The door, in the event of smoke, if not already closed, will close automatically and be held closed.	CD-C
COMMENT:		
1. A <i>smoke control door</i> may be held closed by use of a door closer. The door need not be latched.		
2. Requirements for <i>smoke control doors</i> are given in C/AS1 Paragraph 6.19.1 and 6.19.8, and Appendix C Paragraph C8.1.		
	Smoke developed index (SDI) That index number for smoke developed when determined according to the <i>standard test</i> method for measuring the properties of lining materials.	CD-C
	Smoke separation Any vertical, horizontal or inclined <i>building element</i> with <i>known smoke-stopping or smoke-leakage characteristics</i> .	Code
	Socket outlet An accessory fixed to a wall or ceiling and designed to accept a plug that extends the electrical supply to an appliance by means of a flexible cable.	CD-G2
	Soffit bearer See eaves bearer .	Simple House
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Soffit plate See ribbon board .	Simple House
	Soft edge A compatible soft edging seamed onto <i>flashings</i> to provide closure to profiled <i>cladding</i> .	CD-E2
	Soil fixture A <i>sanitary fixture</i> constructed to receive solid and/or liquid excreted human waste. It includes bedpan disposal units, slop sinks, urinals, water closet pans, and water-flushed sanitary towel disposal units.	CD-G1, CD-G13
	Sound transmission class (STC) A single number rating derived from measured values of transmission loss in accordance with classification ASTM E 413, Determination of Sound Transmission Class. It provides an estimate of the performance of a partition in certain common sound insulation situations.	Code
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Spacing or spaced The distance at which members are spaced, measured centre to centre.	Simple House

Definition	Source	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Spans See member span and support span .	Simple House
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Specific design Design and detailing for compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> , of a proposed part or parts of a <i>building</i> which are not shown in this Acceptable Solution.	CD-E2
	Specific design Design and detailing of a proposed <i>building</i> or parts of a <i>building</i> , demonstrating compliance with the Building Code, that shall be provided to the <i>building consent authority</i> for assessment and approval as part of the <i>building consent</i> process. <i>Buildings</i> , or parts of <i>buildings</i> , requiring <i>specific design</i> are beyond the scope of the <i>Simple House Acceptable Solution</i> .	Simple House
	Specified features , for the purposes of Clause F6, means the following:	Code
	(a) <i>building elements</i> that may act as obstructions:	
	(b) safety features required under clauses of the <i>Building Code</i> other than Clause F6 (for example, <i>handrails</i> required under Clause D1):	
	(c) changes in direction:	
	(d) stairs and ramps:	
	(e) escape doors:	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	(f) entries to a <i>safe place</i> .	
	Specified intended life has the meaning given to it by section 113(3) of the Building Act 2004.	BA04
	Section 113(3) states:	
	“(3) In subsection (2), specified intended life , in relation to a building, means the period of time, as stated in an application for a building consent or in the consent itself, for which the building is proposed to be used for its intended use.”	
	Specified system—	BA04
	(a) means a system or feature that—	
	(i) is contained in a <i>building</i> ; and	
	(ii) contributes to the proper functioning of the <i>building</i> (for example, an automatic sprinkler system);	
	And	
	(iii) is declared by the Governor-General, by Order in Council, to be a <i>specified system</i> for the purposes of this Act; and	
	(b) includes a cable car.	
	Spread of flame index (SFI) That index number for spread of flame which is determined according to the <i>standard test</i> method for measuring the properties of lining materials.	CD-C
	Spillway Weir, channel, conduit, tunnel, gate or other structure designed to permit discharges from the reservoir.	DG

Definition	Source
<p>Stability In the context of <i>fire</i> protection, the time in minutes for which a prototype specimen of a <i>primary element</i>, when subject to the <i>standard test</i> for <i>fire</i> resistance, has continued to carry its <i>fire</i> design load without failure.</p> <p>COMMENT: The <i>fire</i> design load should be as specified in B1/VM1.</p>	Code
<p>Stairway A series of steps or stairs with or without landings, including all necessary <i>handrails</i> and giving access between two different levels.</p>	CD-C, CD-D1
<p>Stainless steel flashings Stainless steel <i>flashings</i> shall be:</p> <p>(a) minimum thickness of 0.45 mm, and</p> <p>(b) Type 304 or 316 stainless steel in accordance with Table 1 of ISO/TS 15510.</p>	Simple House
<p>Stanchion A connecting device, fixed into the structure of a <i>building</i>, that provides support for <i>handrails</i>, aerials and similar structures.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Standards means specifications for <i>building</i> materials, methods, processes or practices that provide a basis for determining consistent and acceptable minimum levels of quality, performance, safety and reliability.</p> <p>COMMENT: Standards are developed by organisations that are recognised by the Government. In New Zealand, standards are developed by a trading arm of the Standards Council, a crown entity operating under the Standards Act 1988. In Australia, standards are developed by Standards Australia, which is recognised through a memorandum of understanding with the Commonwealth Government.</p>	HB
<p>Standard test A test method which is recognised as being appropriate for the <i>fire</i> protection properties being assessed.</p> <p>COMMENT: A list of <i>standard test</i> methods is given in Appendix C of C/AS1.</p>	CD-C
<p>Standard year For the purposes of determining natural lighting, the hours between 8 am and 5 pm each day with an allowance being made for daylight saving.</p>	Code
<p>Statutory authority means an authority or organisation that has the statutory power to classify or register land or <i>buildings</i> for any purpose.</p>	BA04
<p>Stopend A turn-up at the upper edge of profiled metal <i>cladding</i>, or at the end of gutters and some types of <i>flashings</i>.</p> <p>COMMENT: A <i>stopend</i> assists the control of moisture by ensuring any moisture reaching the edge of the roofing is deflected from further entry.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Storage water heater A <i>water tank</i> with an integral <i>water heater</i> for the storage of hot water.</p>	CD-G12
<p>Storey That portion of a <i>building</i> included between the upper surface of any floor and the upper surface of the floor immediately above, except the top <i>storey</i> shall be that portion of a <i>building</i> included between the upper surface of the topmost floor and the ceiling or roof above.</p>	CD-E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
Town gas A manufactured gas.	CD-G11
Toxic environment An environment that contains <i>contaminants</i> that can contaminate the water supply in concentrations greater than those included in the New Zealand Drinking Water Standard 1995.	CD-G12
Trade means any trade, business, industry, profession, occupation, activity of commerce, or undertaking relating to— (a) the supply or acquisition of goods or services; or (b) the acquisition of <i>household units</i> or any interest in land.	BA04
Transverse flashing A roof <i>flashing</i> that runs across the roof slope, at right angles to the roof <i>cladding</i> profile.	CD-E2
Trap A chamber which is installed in the <i>drain</i> and incorporates features to intercept and retain floatable debris.	CD-E1
Trapezoidal A type of profiled metal <i>cladding</i> with symmetrical or asymmetrical crests, with troughs between the crests.	CD-E2
Travel distance The length of the <i>escape route</i> as a whole or the individual lengths of its parts, namely: (a) <i>Open paths</i> (b) <i>Protected paths</i> and (c) <i>Safe paths</i> .	Code
Trickle ventilator A controllable ventilation opening through the external envelope to the outside to provide background ventilation.	CD-G4
Trimmer A member supporting the wall <i>framing</i> beneath, or over an opening in a <i>non-loadbearing wall</i> and carrying wind loads to the <i>trimmer studs</i> .	Simple House
Trimmer stud A <i>stud</i> located on the side of an opening.	Simple House
Trough profile A type of profiled metal <i>cladding</i> comprising vertical ribs with flat, or lightly profiled pans between the ribs. Also known as ribbed, secret fixed or tray profile.	CD-E2

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Definition	Source
------------	--------

U

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Underlay The material used behind a *roof* or *wall cladding*. Refer **Wall underlay** and **Roof underlay**. **CD-E2**

Unisex facilities Facilities available for use by either sex. **CD-G1**

COMMENT:

Unisex facilities may also be described as both gender facilities.

Unitary authority has the meaning given to it by section 5(1) of the Local Government Act 2002. **BA04/LGA**

Section 5(1) states:

“**unitary authority**” means a territorial authority that has the responsibilities, duties, and powers of a regional council conferred on it under—
(a) the provisions of any Act; or
(b) an Order in Council giving effect to a reorganisation scheme”

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Universal access Where elements and spaces are accessible to and usable by people of all ages and abilities to the greatest extent possible. **Simple House**

Unprotected area in relation to an *external wall* of a *building* means: **Code**

(a) Any part of the *external wall* which has less than the required *FRR*.

For example, a non *fire* rated window, door or other opening or sheet metal.

(b) Any part of the *external wall* which has *combustible* material more than 1.0mm thick attached to or applied to its external face, whether for *cladding* or any other purpose.

uPVC flashings uPVC *flashings* shall be a minimum of 0.75 mm thick and: **Simple House**

(a) comply with the requirements of the following Clauses of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2:

ii) Clause 9.2 Impact resistance

iii) Clause 9.3 Tensile strength

iv) Clause 9.4 Colourfastness and impact resistance following ultraviolet light exposure.

(b) where exposed to the weather, shall also comply with Section 8 of AS/NZS 4256: Part 2.

(c) have a finish colour with a reflectance of 40% or more, when measured in accordance with ASTM C1549 or ASTM E903.

Amend 11
Sep 2010

V

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Valley board A board laid to support a *valley gutter*. **Simple House**

Valley gutter A gutter running down the valley formed by the intersection of two pitched roof surfaces. **CD-E2**

Valve vented storage water heater (unvented storage water heater) A *storage water heater* in which the required venting to the atmosphere is controlled by a valve. **CD-G12**

Vapour barrier Sheet material or coating having a low water-vapour transmission, and used to minimise water-vapour penetration in *buildings*. (*Vapour barriers* are sometimes referred to as *damp-proof membranes*.) **CD-B2**

	Definition	Source
	Vent line A pipe or tube which conveys gas to a safe place outside the <i>building</i> from a gas pressure <i>regulator</i> relief valve.	CD-G10
	Vent pipe A pipe for the purpose of protecting <i>water seals</i> that at its upper end is either open to the atmosphere or fitted with an <i>air admittance</i> valve and that at its lower end is connected to a <i>discharge pipe</i> .	CD-G13
	Verification Method means a method by which compliance with the <i>Building Code</i> may be verified.	BA04
Amend 11 Sep 2010	VSG Visual stress graded, refers to verified timber that is initially sorted visually in accordance with NZS 3603. See also MSG .	Simple House
	W	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Wall refer External wall .	CD-E2
	Wall area , in relation to a <i>building</i> , means the area (expressed in square metres) of internally-exposed <i>external walls</i> , including any door openings, of the <i>building</i> .	Code
	Wall bracing element A section of wall that performs a <i>bracing</i> function.	Simple House
	Wall underlay An absorbent synthetic wrap used as part of the wall <i>cladding system</i> to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which may occasionally penetrate the wall <i>cladding</i> is directed back to the exterior of the <i>building</i> .	Simple House
	The <i>wall underlay</i> shall have the properties in Table 23 of the <i>Acceptable Solution E2/AS1</i> for Building Code Clause E2 External Moisture:	
	(a) absorbency – no requirement	
	(b) vapour resistance 7 MN s/g or less	
	(c) water resistance of 20 mm or greater	
	(d) pH of extract of between 6.0 and 9.0	
	(e) shrinkage no more than 0.5%	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	(f) mechanical edge tear and tensile strength to AS/NZS 4200.	
	Wall underlay A building paper, synthetic material or rigid sheathing used as part of the <i>wall cladding system</i> to assist the control of moisture by ensuring moisture which occasionally penetrates the <i>wall cladding</i> is directed back to the exterior of the <i>building</i> .	CD-E2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Waste pipe A <i>discharge pipe</i> that conveys the discharge from <i>waste water fixtures</i> to a <i>gully trap</i> .	CD-G13
	Waste water fixture A <i>sanitary fixture</i> or <i>sanitary appliance</i> used to receive wastes, and which is not a <i>soil fixture</i> .	CD-G13
	Water heater A device for heating water.	CD-B2, CD-G12
	Water main A water supply pipe that is under the control, or maintained by a <i>network utility operator</i> .	Code
	Waterproof and waterproofing The complete and total resistance of a <i>building element</i> to the ingress of any moisture.	CD-E2
	Water seal The depth of water that can be retained in a <i>water trap</i> .	CD-G2, CD-G13

Definition	Source
<p>Water supply system Pipes, fittings and tanks used or intended to be used for the storage and reticulation of water from a <i>water main</i> or other water source to <i>sanitary fixtures</i>, <i>sanitary appliances</i> and fittings within a <i>building</i>.</p>	Code
<p>Water tank (vessel) A covered fixed container for storing hot or cold water.</p>	CD-G12
<p>Water trap A fitting designed to retain a depth of water that prevents foul air and gases escaping from the <i>plumbing system</i> or <i>foul water drainage system</i> and entering a <i>building</i>.</p>	CD-G2, CD-G13
<p>Weathertightness and weathertight Terms used to describe the resistance of a <i>building</i> to the weather. <i>Weathertightness</i> is a state where water is prevented from entering and accumulating behind the <i>cladding</i> in amounts that can cause undue dampness or damage to the <i>building elements</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>COMMENT: The term <i>weathertightness</i> is not necessarily the same as <i>waterproof</i>. However, a <i>weathertight building</i>, even under severe weather conditions, is expected to limit moisture ingress to inconsequential amounts, insufficient to cause undue dampness inside <i>buildings</i> and damage to <i>building elements</i>. Moisture that may occasionally enter is able to harmlessly escape or evaporate.</p>	
<p>Weathertightness and weathertight Terms used to describe the resistance of a <i>building</i> to the weather.</p>	Simple House
<p>Wet area An area within a <i>building</i> supplied with water from a water supply system including bathrooms and showers, laundries, sanitary compartments and kitchen areas.</p>	Simple House
<p>Wetwall The exterior <i>cladding</i> on a wall with a <i>drained cavity</i>.</p>	CD-E2
<p>Wharenui A communal meeting house having a large open floor area used for both assembly and sleeping in the traditional Maori manner.</p>	CD-C, CD-H1
<p>Wind zone Categorisation of wind force experienced on a particular site as determined in NZS 3604, Section 5.</p>	CD-E2
<p>COMMENT: Maximum ultimate limit state speeds are: Low <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 32 m/s Medium <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 37 m/s High <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 44 m/s Very high <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 50 m/s Extra high <i>wind zone</i> = wind speed of 55 m/s. <i>Specific design</i> is required for wind speeds greater than 55 m/s.</p>	
<p>Wire dog Galvanised or stainless steel wire, D or Z shaped nail, spiked at each end. Used for fixing timber together to resist uplift</p>	Simple House
<p>Working day means any day except—</p> <p>(a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, the Sovereign's Birthday, Labour Day, and Waitangi Day; and</p> <p>(b) the day observed in the appropriate area as the anniversary of the province of which the area forms a part; and</p> <p>(c) a day in the period beginning on 20 December in any year and ending with the close of 10 January in the following year.</p>	BA04

Amend 11
Sep 2010Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 11
Sep 2010

Index

(Revised by Amendment 6)

This is a complete index for the New Zealand Building Code and Compliance Documents.

A

Access

see **Access Routes**, and **Mechanical Installations for Access**

Access chambers

see Maintenance access to drains

Access points

see Maintenance access to drains

Access to a facility

food and work areas..... **G1/AS1** 3.2, Figure 10

lobbies..... **G1/AS1** 6.3.1

unisex facilities..... **G1/AS1** 1.1.5 c)

Access Routes..... **D1/AS1** 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 1.4.1, 1.5.1, 1.5.3 a),
1.5.4, 1.5.5, 1.6.1, 1.7.1, 1.8.1,
2.0, 5.1.3, Figure 27

see also Accessible routes, Activity space, Doors, Escape routes, Handrails, Height clearances, Level access routes, Mechanical Installations for Access, a Person with a disability, Ramps, Stairs, Obstructions, Vehicles, Wheelchairs

access to buildings..... **NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (a) (b), D1.3.3 (a) (b)**

access within buildings..... **NZBC/D1.1, D1.3.1 (c), D1.3.3 (c), D1.3.5**

corridors..... **NZBC/D1.3.1 (c)**, F6.3.1

level access routes..... **D1/AS1** 2.0

protection from falling..... **D1/AS1** 2.3

slip resistance..... **D1/AS1** 2.1, Table 2

width..... **D1/AS1** 2.2

location..... **D1/AS1** 1.1

principal entrance..... **D1/AS1** 1.1

service and maintenance personnel..... **D1/AS1** 11.0.3

Access to facilities..... **NZBC/D1.3.3 (c)**, G1.3.5; **G3/AS1** Figure 1

Accessible accommodation units..... **D1/AS1** 9.0, 9.1, 9.1.1, 9.2.1, Table 9

see also a Person with a disability

bedrooms..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

dining areas..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

facilities..... **D1/AS1** 9.2

kitchens..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 b) ; **G3/AS1** 1.5.2, Figure 1

laundry..... **G2/AS1** 1.2, Figure 2

sitting areas..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 c)

toilets and baths..... **D1/AS1** 9.2.1 a)

Accessible routes..... **NZBC/D1.3.3, D1.3.4; D1/AS1** 1.1.1 to 1.1.3, 1.5.5 b), 2.1.1,
2.2.1, 7.0.1, 7.0.6, 11.0.1, Figure 27

access to performance areas..... **D1/AS1** 8.2

Accessible units..... **D1/AS1** 1.1.3

Activity space..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (a), D1.3.4 (b), G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b), G5.3.3**

Aged, homes for

see Old people's homes

Air

see also **Ventilation**

airflow control..... **NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1** 3.0

changes..... **G4/VM1** 1.0.1

ducts..... **C/AS1** 6.9.5, 6.19.14, 6.20.20, 6.20.21

purity..... **G4/VM1** 2.0

- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Air-handling systems **G4/AS1** 1.5.1 b)
- Airborne and Impact Sound**..... **G6**
 impact insulation class (IIC)..... **NZBC/G6.3.2**
 noise transmission between abutting occupancies..... **NZBC/G6.1, G6.2**
 sound insulation tests **G6/VM1** 2.0
 sound transmission class (STC)..... **NZBC/G6.3.1; G6/VM1** 1.0
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Alerting devices **F7/AS1** 1.1.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2, 2.2.2 b)
 audible **F7/AS1** 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 2.1.2 c) f)
 visual **F7/AS1** 2.1.2 c) f)
- Alerting the Fire Service **F7/AS1** 1.2.2, 1.2.7, 2.1.2 a), 2.2
- Alternative solutions
 accessible routes **D1/AS1** 11.0
 bedding and backfilling drains..... **E1/AS1** 3.9.8
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | laundry tubs..... **G2/AS1** 1.0.3
 open vented storage water heaters..... **G12/AS1** 6.9.1
 solid waste storage **G15/AS1** 3.1
 storage water heaters
 seismic restraint **G12/AS1** 6.11.4
 thermal resistance..... **E3/AS1** 1.1.5 (Comment)
 unvented (valve vented) storage water heaters **G12/AS1** 6.10.1, Figure 14
 watertightness testing **G12/AS1** 7.5
- Ancillary Buildings** **NZBC/A1** 8.0, **D1.2.1, D1.3.2 (h), D1.3.3, G1.3.5, G8.2, G12.3.0**
- Apartments
 see **Housing**, multi-unit dwellings
- Appliances
 see Sanitary appliances
- Aprons **C/AS1** 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2
- Artificial Light** **G8; NZBC/H1.2 (c), H1.3.5; D1/AS1** 1.5.4 (Comment), 1.8, 4.6;
 adequate lighting..... **NZBC/G8.2**
 energy consumption **H1/AS1** 6.0
 minimum illuminance **NZBC/G8.3; D1/AS1** 4.6.1, Table 8, **G8/AS1** 1.0.1, Table 1
 wattage required..... **D1/AS1** 4.6.1, Table 8; **G8/AS1** 1.0.1, Table 1
- Asbestos
 see **Hazardous Building Materials**
- Assembly care buildings
 see Communal non-residential buildings
- Assembly service buildings
 see Communal non-residential buildings
- Automatic extinguishers..... **G11/AS1** 6.0

B

- Backflow prevention
 see Protection of water supplies
- Balconies..... **C/AS1** 3.14.6 b), 3.14.7, 3.15.7,7.8.7, Figures 3.18 and 3.22
- Banks..... **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)**
 see also Commercial buildings
- Amend 12 | Barges **E2/AS1** 4.6.1.5, 8.3.9, 9.6.8.2, 9.6.9.4, Figures 36, 92 and 97
 Oct 2011 | see also Gutters, barges and fascias
- Barriers.....NZBC/F4.3.1, F4.3.4, F4.3.5, F5.3.2, F5.3.4; **D1/AS1** 1.7;
F4/AS1 1.0; **F5/AS1** 1.0
 see also **Access Routes**, Handrails, **Safety from Falling**,
 Timber barriers
- Amend 11 | accessible route **D1/AS1** 2.3.1
 Sep 2010 |
- Amend 11 | construction **F4/AS1** 1.2, Figures 1-4
 Sep 2010 | construction site..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.6
 fences..... **F5/AS1** 1.1, 1.1.2
 around water hazards **F5/AS1** 1.2
 for specific hazards **F5/AS1** 1.0.2
 heights..... **F4/AS1** 1.1, Table 1
 hoardings..... **F5/AS1** 1.1, 1.1.3, 1.1.5
 viewing windows **F5/AS1** 1.1.4
 parapet and rail barriers..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.3, Figure 5
 safety enclosures for ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22
 scaffolding..... **F4/AS1** 1.2.6
 stair barriers **F4/AS1** Figure 4
 toeboards **F5/AS1** 1.4
 types of barriers **F5/AS1** 1.0.3
- Basements **C/AS1** 3.3.2 i), 3.7.1, 3.15.2, 4.5.15, 6.9.3, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19
- Amend 12 | see also Floors, basement floors
 Oct 2011 |
- Basins..... **G1/AS1** 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1; **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, 5.5.2, Table 2
- Baths **G1/AS1** Table 2; **G13/AS1** Table 2
- Bedrooms
 see Habitable spaces
- Bidets **G1/AS1** 2.4; **G13/AS1** 5.5.2, Table 2
- Boarding Houses
 see Communal residential buildings
- Boundary
 see Notional boundary, Relevant boundaries
- Bridges
 see Ancillary buildings
- Building construction
 non-solid construction **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4
 solid construction..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.1.3, 2.1.4
 thermal envelope **H1/VM1** 1.0, 1.1.2, **H1/AS1** 2.0, 2.1.3, 2.1.4
 thermal resistance (R-value)..... **H1/VM1** 1.1.2, 1.1.3, 1.2.1, 1.4.1,
H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4, 2.2.1, 2.3.1, 2.3.2
- Amend 11 | Building elements **NZBC/B1.2, B1.3.1, B1.3.2, B1.3.3, B2.3, E2.3.2, E2.3.3,**
 Sep 2010 |

- E2.3.4, E2.3.5, E2.3.6, E3.2, E3.3.5, F3.3 (f), G3.3.2 (b) (c), G6.2, G9.3.1 (a) (e); B1/VM4 1.0.1; C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.2.1, 5.6.1**
- see also Floors, Ceilings, Roofs
- elements in contact with the ground..... **NZBC/E2.3.3**
- primary elements..... **C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 a), c), 5.6.1 a), 5.7.1, 5.7.4, 5.7.7, 5.7.8, 5.9, 6.14.3, 7.1.2 b), 7.8.10 b), 7.9.4, 7.9.5 a), 7.10.3, 7.10.4, C7.1.1**
- requiring noise control..... **G6/AS1 1.0.2, Figure 1**
- secondary elements..... **C/AS1 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 b), 5.6.1 a), 5.7.1, 5.7.8, 7.1.2 b), 7.10.3, C7.1.1**
- unrated primary..... **C/AS1 5.9.4, Figure 5.2**
- Building height..... **C/AS1 5.7.6 c), 7.11.3 a), 7.11.4**
- Amend 11 | Building performance index
Sep 2010 | see Energy efficiency provisions
- Building site..... **E1/VM1 3.2.2, 4.0.1, 4.1.10, E1/AS1 1.0.1**
- evaluation..... **E1/VM1 1.0.3**
- Buildings
- air-supported structures..... **C/AS1 6.20.18**
- atriums..... **C/AS1 6.22**
- building elements..... **B1/VM4 2.0.3**
- building separation..... **NZBC/B1.3.3 (o)**
- car parking..... **C/AS1 6.8.4, 6.10.3 to 6.10.6, 7.8.2, 7.9.16, Figure 6.2**
- carports..... **C/AS1 7.8.10 (Comment)**
- commercial..... **H1/VM1 1.0, 1.0.2, H1/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.3, 1.0.4, 6.1.1**
- communal non-residential..... **H1/VM1 1.0, H1/AS1 1.0.1, 1.0.4, 6.1.1**
- Amend 11 | communal residential..... **H1/VM1 1.0, H1/AS1 1.0.1**
Sep 2010 | dwellings
- attached and multi-unit..... **C/AS1 1.3.5, 1.3.6**
- Amend 11 | detached..... **C/AS1 1.3.3**
Sep 2010 | earth buildings..... **B1/VM1 8.0, B1/AS1 4.0, E2/AS2 1.0**
- Amend 11 | education..... **C/AS1 3.8.4, 6.20.7**
Sep 2010 | grandstands..... **C/AS1 3.16.7**
- hospitals..... **C/AS1 6.6.6**
- hotels, motels and accommodation..... **C/AS1 2.2.3**
- housing..... **H1/VM1 1.0, 1.1, H1/AS1 1.0, 2.0**
- detached dwellings..... **H1/VM1 1.1.3, 1.2.1**
- group dwellings..... **H1/VM1 1.1.3**
- multi-unit dwellings..... **H1/VM1 1.1.3, 1.2.1, H1/AS1 2.1.2**
- Amend 11 | wharenui..... **H1/VM1 1.1.3**
Sep 2010 | industrial..... **H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.0.2, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 1.0.3**
- intended life
- see **Durability**
- intended use
- see Intended use
- Amend 11 | large buildings..... **H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.3, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 2.2.1, 4.0.1**
- Amend 12 | masonry buildings..... **B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.1.1**
- Amend 11 | membrane structures..... **NZBC/C4.1.1; C/AS1 6.20.17 to 6.20.19, C3.1.1**
Sep 2010 | minimum floor level..... **E1/AS1 2.0, Figures 1 and 2**
- multi-storey buildings..... **C/AS1 2.2.5, 6.12.2**
- open air auditoriums..... **C/AS1 3.16.5**
- open sided buildings..... **C/AS1 7.8.8 to 7.8.10, Figure 7.10**
- Amend 11 | purpose group classification..... **C/AS1 2.2, Table 2.1**
Sep 2010 | reference buildings..... **H1/VM1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, H1/AS1 2.1.3, 2.1.4**
- remaining occupied during fire..... **C/AS1 5.6.9**
- residential community care..... **C/AS1 2.4**
- seasonal use buildings..... **F7/AS1 1.1.2 c)**
- single-floor buildings..... **F7/AS1 1.1.2 a) b)**

Buildings (continued)

	siteworks	
	<i>see</i> Structure	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	small buildings.....	H1/VM1 1.0.1, 1.1.1, H1/AS1 1.0.2, 2.1, 4.0.1
	taverns.....	C/AS1 2.2.3
	theatres	C/AS1 6.3.1, 6.19.9, Figure 6.13
	three-floor buildings.....	F7/AS1 1.1.2 b)
Amend 12 Oct 2011	three storey buildings.....	G13/AS1 Figure 7
	timber framed buildings.....	B1/AS1 3.0, B1/AS3 1.1.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	two-floor buildings	F7/AS1 1.1.2 a) b)
	wharenui.....	C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), 6.7.9, H1/VM1 1.1.3

C

- Call points..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.4
- Camping grounds..... **NZBC/G2.2**, G2.3.4; **G1/AS1** 3.4.2, Tables 1 to 3; **G2/AS1** Table 1
see *also* Communal residential buildings
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Car park ventilation **G4/AS1** 1.5.4
- Car parking buildings
see Commercial buildings, Vehicles
- Carports
see Outbuildings
- Catchment
characteristics **E1/VM1** 1.0.2 a), 2.0.1, 2.1, 2.3, 4.2.1
- Ceilings..... **NZBC/G6.3.1**; **G3/AS1** 2.1.2, 2.2.3
floor/ceiling assemblies **G6/AS1** Figure 3
- Centres for people with disabilities
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Child care centres
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential Buildings
- Amend 11
Sep 2010
Amend 12
Oct 2011 | Children **NZBC/D1.3.3 (h)**, **F4.3.3**, **F4.3.4 (f)**, F4.3.5 (a), F5.2 (d),
F5.3.3, G15.3.2 (g); **D1/AS1** 4.1.8 a);
F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1-4; **F5/AS1** 1.0.2

See *also* Early childhood centres
- Chimneys **B1/AS1** 1.2, 8.0, **B1/AS3** 2.1; **C/AS1** 9.5, Figure 9.1, 9.2 and 9.3
bracing units **B1/AS3** 1.9, 1.9.3, 1.9.6, Table 2
brick chimneys **B1/AS3** 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) b), 1.2.1 a), 1.6.2 a),
1.7.1, 1.7.6, 1.8.1, 1.8.5 a), Figures 2 to 4 and 7, Table 1
cantilever height **B1/AS3** 1.1.2
chimney bases **B1/AS3** 1.1.3 a), 1.6.1, 1.9.4 b)
chimney breasts **B1/AS3** 1.5, Table 1
chimney depth **B1/AS3** 1.1.3
chimney height **B1/AS3** 1.1.2
chimney liners **B1/AS3** 1.1.4
Amend 11
Sep 2010 | chimney lintels **B1/AS3** Table 1
chimney materials **B1/AS3** 1.8
chimney stacks **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.6.1
chimney wall thickness **B1/AS3** 1.2, 1.2.1
chimney width **B1/AS3** 1.1.3
concrete chimneys **B1/AS3** 1.1.1, 1.1.3 a) c), 1.2.1 b) c), 1.6.2 a) b),
1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.2, 1.8.5 b), Figures 4 and 5, Table 1
concrete masonry **B1/AS3** 1.8.4
floor brackets **B1/AS3** 1.7.1, 1.7.3 to 1.7.5, 1.9.4 b) c), Figure 6
foundations **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.1.3 a), 1.3, 1.3.1,
1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.7.4, 1.7.5, 1.8.4, Figure 1
foundation slabs **B1/AS3** 1.1.2, 1.3.2, 1.7.4, 1.7.5
gathers **B1/AS3** 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.7.5
hearths **B1/AS3** 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3
hearth slabs **B1/AS3** 2.2, 2.2.1, 2.2.2, 2.2.3
packers **B1/AS3** 1.7.2, 1.7.6 c)
precast pumice concrete chimneys **B1/AS3** 1.1.1 b), 1.1.3 a) c),
1.2.1 c), 1.6.2 b), 1.7.1, 1.7.13, 1.8.3,
1.8.5 c), Figures 5 and 7, Table 1
compressive strength **B1/AS3** 1.8.3 c)
construction of **B1/AS3** 1.8.3
restraint **B1/AS3** 1.7, 1.7.1, 1.7.13, Figures 6 and 7
roof brackets **B1/AS3** 1.7.1, 1.7.3, 1.7.4, Figure 6
roof ties **B1/AS3** 1.7.5
structural diaphragms **B1/AS3** 1.9.5
wall ties **B1/AS3** 1.7.5, 1.7.7, 1.7.8
closely spaced wall ties **B1/AS3** 1.7.5, 1.9.4 c)

- Churches
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Cinemas **NZBC/G5.3.5**
see also Communal non-residential buildings
- Cladding finish colours **E2/AS1 2.4**
- Classified uses **NZBC/A1**
- Cleaners' sinks **G13/AS1** Table 2
- Clubrooms
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Cold water expansion valves (explosion control valves) **G12/AS1** 6.3.3 a), 6.6.2, 6.6.3,
Figures 8 to 10, Table 6
installation **G12/AS1** 6.6.5
relief valve drains **G12/AS1** 6.7, Figures 8 to 10 and 13
- Colleges
see Communal non-residential buildings
- Commercial buildings **NZBC/A1 5.0, E3.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) (b), G3.3.2 (b)**, G3.3.6,
G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4, H1.2 (c);
G3/AS1 2.0.1; H1/AS1 1.0
- Communal non-residential buildings **NZBC/A1 4.0, E1.3.2, E3.3.1,**
G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G5.3.5, G8.2,
G9.3.4, H1.2 (c); **H1/AS1 1.0.3, 1.0.4**
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | assembly care **NZBC/A1 4.0.3**
assembly service **NZBC/A1 4.0.2, H1.2 (a)**
halls **NZBC/G5.3.5**
places of assembly **D1/AS1 8.0**
- Communal residential buildings **NZBC/A1 3.0, G5.2.1 (c), G5.3.4, G8.2, G9.3.4;**
D1/AS1 9.0, 9.1.1; H1/AS1 1.0.1
community care **NZBC/A1 4.0.2**
community service **NZBC/A1 3.0.2**
- Communes
see Housing, group dwellings
- Community care buildings
see Communal residential buildings
- Community service buildings **D1/AS1 1.1.3**
see also Communal residential buildings
- Computer centres
see Commercial buildings
- Concealed spaces **C/AS1** 6.18.1, 6.18.10
cavity barriers **C/AS1** 6.18.1, 6.18.4 to 6.18.6
ceiling space firecells **C/AS1** 6.12.8
ceiling space restrictions **C/AS1** 6.18.7 to 6.18.10
in walls and floors **C/AS1** 6.18.4
within firecells **C/AS1** 6.18.2, 6.18.3, Figure 6.10
see also **External Moisture, Internal Moisture**
- Concealed works **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 b)
- Concrete **B2/AS1 3.1**
see also Design, concrete
- Condensation
see **Internal Moisture**

	Construction moisture	E2/AS1 10.0
	maximum acceptable moisture contents	E2/AS1 10.2
	measuring moisture content	E2/AS1 10.3
	concrete floors	E2/AS1 10.3.2
	timber	E2/AS1 10.3.1
	moisture in materials.....	E2/AS1 10.1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Construction site barriers	F4/AS1 1.2.6
	Construction and Demolition Hazards	F5
	areas accessible to the public.....	NZBC/F5.3.2
	barriers	NZBC/F5.3.2, F5.3.4
	demolition sites.....	F5/AS1 1.0
	entry of children	NZBC/F5.2 (d), F5.3.3; F5/AS1 1.0.2
	falling objects	NZBC/F5.2 (a) (b), F5.3.1
	lifting equipment.....	NZBC/F5.3.4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Contaminants.....	G14/VM1 1.6, Table 1
	<i>see also</i> Hazardous agents on site , contaminants	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Control panel.....	F7/AS1 1.1.5, 1.2.2, 2.2.2 b)
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Corridors	C/AS1 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
	<i>see also</i> Access Routes	
	Corrosives	<i>see</i> Hazardous Substances and Processes , Class 8
	Creep	<i>see</i> Structure , loads
	Cross connections	<i>see</i> Protection of water supplies
	Cyclic loads	<i>see</i> Structure , loads

D

Dampness

see **External Moisture, Internal Moisture**

Dams

see Ancillary buildings

Dangerous goods

see also **Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes**

Day care institution

see Early childhood centres, Communal non-residential buildings

Dead ends

see Escape routesAmend 12
Oct 2011Decks and pergolas..... **E2/AS1** 7.0*see also* Membrane roofs and decks*see also* Enclosed Balustradesattachment to building structure **E2/AS1** 7.2pergolas **E2/AS1** 7.2.2, Figure 15slatted timber decks to walls **E2/AS1** 7.2.1, Figure 15cantilevered decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.2.1.1, Figure 16level thresholds **E2/AS1** 7.3, Figures 17A and 17Benclosed decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.1Amend 12
Oct 2011removable surfaces..... **E2/AS1** 7.3.1.1, Figure 16timber removable surface **E2/AS1** 7.3.1.2ground floor level access **E2/AS1** 7.3.2, Figure 17Bconcrete slab **E2/AS1** Paragraph 7.3.2.1, Figure 17Btimber floor..... **E2/AS1** Paragraph 7.3.2.2, Figure 17BAmend 12
Oct 2011thresholds for decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.1, Figure 14Amend 12
Oct 2011enclosed decks..... **E2/AS1** 7.1.2slatted decks **E2/AS1** 7.1.1, Figure 14

Deflections

see **Structure**

Demolition

see **Construction and Demolition Hazards**Dental surgeries..... **NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)***see also* Commercial buildingsAmend 11
Sep 2010

Design

aluminium..... **B1/VM1** 7.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0Amend 11
Sep 2010concrete..... **B1/VM1** 3.0concrete masonry **B1/VM1** 4.0, **B1/AS3** 1.3.3

drains

see DrainsAmends
11 and 12earth building..... **B1/VM1** 8.0, **B1/AS1** 4.0

foundations

see Foundationsloadings **B1/VM1** 2.0Amend 12
Oct 2011earthquake..... **B1/VM1** 1.0, 2.0, **B1/AS1** 1.4, **B1/AS3** 1.9, Table 2limit state..... **B1/VM1** 2.0, 7.1Amend 11
Sep 2010siteworks **B1/VM1** 10.0steel..... **B1/VM1** 5.0Amend 11
Sep 2010strength reduction factor **B1/VM4** 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4structural design action standards **B1/VM1** 2.0timber **B1/VM1** 6.0, **B1/AS1** 3.0Amend 12
Oct 2011

windows

see Windows

Doors (continued)

subdividing escape routes	C/AS1 3.17
turnstiles	D1/AS1 7.0.6
visibility	D1/AS1 7.0.4
vision panels	C/AS1 3.17.6, 5.8.10
width	D1/AS1 7.0.3
Downlights	C/AS1 9.4
Downpipes	E1/AS1 3.4.2 a) b), 3.7.8, 4.0, 5.1.1
installation	E1/AS1 4.3
materials	E1/AS1 4.1, Table 4
sizing	E1/AS1 4.2, Table 5
Drainage system	G13/AS1 5.1.2, 5.5.2, 5.7.3, 5.7.4 b), G13/AS2 1.0.2, 3.1.1, 3.3.2, 4.1.1, 5.10.1
Drains	NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2, G13.3.3, G15.3.3; B1/VM1 11.0, B1/AS1 6.0; G13/AS1 4.2.2 d), G13/AS2 1.0
access points	E1/AS1 3.7, 3.7.3, 3.7.7, 3.7.8
access chambers	E1/VM1 5.0.1, E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 12
inspection chambers	E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b), 3.7.4, 3.7.5, Figure 11
inspection points	E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 b)
rodding points	E1/AS1 3.7.1, 3.7.2 a), Figure 10
alignment	E1/AS1 3.3, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5 <i>see also</i> Drain, layout
bedding and backfilling	E1/AS1 3.9, 3.9.2, Figure 13; G13/AS2 Figure 7
alternative solutions	E1/AS1 3.9.8
materials	E1/AS1 3.9.5; G13/AS2 Table 1
placing and compacting	E1/AS1 3.9.6; G13/AS2 5.5
proximity to buildings	E1/AS1 3.9.7, Figure 14;
trench slope	E1/AS1 3.9.3
trench width	E1/AS1 3.9.4
bends	G13/AS2 3.1
bubble-up chamber system	E1/AS1 3.4.2, Figures 6 and 7
connections	G13/AS2 3.2.1, Figure 1
construction	G13/AS2 5.2, Figure 7
diameter <i>see</i> Drains, sizing	
disused drains	G13/AS2 5.10
downstream water systems	E1/VM1 4.3
drain vent pipes	G13/AS2 Figure 3, Table 3
drains under buildings	E1/AS1 3.7.6 to 3.7.8
gradient	E1/AS1 3.3.1, 3.7.3 b); G13/AS1 Table 5, G13/AS2 3.5, Table 2
minimum gradient	E1/AS1 3.4, Table 2
installation	G13/AS2 5.0, 5.5
joints	E1/AS1 3.5, Table 3; G13/AS2 5.1
junctions	G13/AS2 3.2
layout	E1/AS1 3.3.1, 3.7.3 a), Figures 4 and 5
leakage tests	E1/VM1 8.0, E1/AS1 3.8
high pressure air test	E1/VM1 8.3
low pressure air test	E1/VM1 8.2
water test	E1/VM1 8.1
maintenance access <i>see</i> Maintenance access to drains	
materials	E1/AS1 3.1, Table 1; G13/AS2 2.0, Table 1
open water, upstream of site	E1/VM1 4.2
pipe water, upstream of site	E1/VM1 4.1
quantity	E1/VM1 4.1.10
tailwater depth	E1/VM1 4.1.6, 4.1.7
proximity to buildings	G13/AS2 5.6, Figure 8
secondary flow	E1/VM1 4.0, 4.1.11 E1/AS1 1.0.1 d)
downstream drainage	E1/VM1 4.3
headwater depth	E1/VM1 4.1.4, 4.1.5, 4.1.8, 4.1.9, Figures 5 to 7, 10 and 11

Drains (continued)

- site – outfall protection **E1/VM1** 7.0
- sizing..... **E1/VM1** 3.0, **E1/AS1** 3.2, Figure 3; **G13/AS2** 3.6, Table 2
- energy losses **E1/VM1** 5.0
- hydraulic design of drains..... **E1/VM1** 1.0.4, 3.2, Figures 6 and 7
- air entrainment **E1/VM1** 3.2.4
- headwater depth **E1/VM1** 3.2.2, Figure 5 a)
- minimum size **E1/VM1** 3.1
- minimum velocity **E1/VM1** 6.0
- pipe size decrease **E1/VM1** 5.0.2
- soak pits **E1/VM1** 9.0, Figure 13
- sumps..... **E1/AS1** 3.6.1, 3.6.2, Figures 8 and 9
- surface water inlets..... **E1/AS1** 3.6
- under buildings..... **E1/AS1** 3.7.6; **G13/AS2** 5.8, 5.9, Figure 13
- upstream water systems **E1/VM1** 4.1, 4.2
- ventilation **G13/AS2** 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
- watertightness **G13/AS2** 6.1.1
- Draught diverters **G4/AS1** 2.3.2
- Drinking fountains **G13/AS1** Table 2
- Durability**..... **B2; B2/VM1** 1.0, **B2/AS1** 1.2, Figure 1
- code compliance certificate..... **NZBC/B2.3**
- ease of access and replacement **B2/AS1** 1.2.1
- evaluation **B2/VM1** 1.0, **B2/AS1** 1.2, Figure 1
- examples of requirement **B2/AS1** 1.3.1, Table 1
- generic materials **B2/AS1** 3.0
- in service history **B2/VM1** 1.1
- laboratory testing **B2/VM1** 1.2
- similar materials **B2/VM1** 1.3
- intended life..... **NZBC/B1.3.1, B2.1, B2.3**
- 5 year durability **B2/AS1** Table 1
- 15 year durability **B2/AS1** Table 1
- 50 year durability **B2/AS1** Table 1
- maintenance..... **B2/AS1** 2.0
- normal..... **B2/AS1** 2.1
- scheduled **B2/AS1** 2.2
- specified intended life..... **NZBC/B2.3**
- timber **B2/AS1** 3.2
- Dynamic loads
- see **Structure**, loads

E

- Early childhood centres..... **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.2, G7.2, G12.3.4; G2/AS1** Table 1; **G3/AS1** 1.0.1; **G5/AS1** 1.0.3
see also Communal non-residential buildings
- Amend 11
 Sep 2010 | Earth buildings **B2/AS1** 3.4, **E2/AS2** 1.0
- Earth pressure
see **Structure**, loads
- Earth retaining structures **B1/VM4** 2.0.3
- Earthquakes
 Amend 11
 Sep 2010 | *see* **Structure**, loads
- Ease of access and replacement..... **B2/AS1** 1.2.1
- Effluents..... **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 f)
- Amend 12
 Oct 2011 | EIFS **E2/AS1** 9.9
 battens **E2/AS1** 9.9.5
 coating..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.6
 decorative mouldings **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.4
 finish coats **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.3
 reinforcing..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.1
 reinforcing base coat..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.6.2
 EIFS/floor slab junction..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.7, Figure 125
 general..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.2
 installation **E2/AS1** 9.9.4, Table 23
 fixing blocks..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.4
 Amend 12
 Oct 2011 | fixings **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.1, Table 24
 joints **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.2
 movement control joints **E2/AS1** 9.9.4.3, Figure 124
- Amend 12
 Oct 2011 | limitations **E2/AS1** 9.9.1
 materials..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.3
 fibreglass reinforcing mesh..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.3.2
 polystyrene sheet..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.3.1
 parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.9.10
 EIFS topped enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.9.10.2, Figure 129
 flush-finished balustrade top..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.10.1, Figures 129 and 130
 Amend 12
 Oct 2011 | metal cappings **E2/AS1** 9.9.10.2, Figures 12, 13 and 130
- Amend 12
 Oct 2011 | pipes and service penetrations..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.8, Figure 126
 windows and doors..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.9, Figures 17c, 127 and 128
- Electrical codes of practice..... **G9/VM1** 1.0.1, **G9/AS1** 1.0.1
- Electricity** **G9**
 electrical installations..... **NZBC/G9.1, G9.2, G9.3.1 to G9.3.3; G9/VM1** 1.0
 domestic cooking and refrigeration **G3/AS1** 1.4.1
 laundries **G2/AS1** 1.1.2
 electromechanical stress **NZBC/G9.3.1 (d)**
 essential services..... **NZBC/G9.3.2**
 external supply system **NZBC/G9.3.3**
 a person with a disability..... **NZBC/G9.3.4**
 light switches **G9/AS1** 2.0.1 a) b)
 socket outlets **G9/AS1** 2.0.1 c)
 temperature..... **NZBC/G9.3.1 (c) (d)**
- Emergency lighting
see **Lighting for Emergency**

- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | Enclosed balustrades..... **E2/AS1** 7.4, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8,
9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10, Figures 101 and 102, Table 3
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | balustrade-to-deck floor junction..... **E2/AS1** 7.4.3, Figures 18 and 62
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | balustrade-to-wall junctions..... **E2/AS1** 7.4.2, Figures 11-12
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | deck drainage..... **E2/AS1** 7.4.1
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | EIFS-topped..... **E2/AS1** 9.9.10, Figure 129
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | flush-finished topped balustrades..... **E2/AS1** 9.7.7.1, Figure 117
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | metal cappings..... **E2/AS1** 7.4.4, Table 7, Figure 5
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | stanchions..... **E2/AS1** 7.4.5, Figure 19
- Enclosing rectangles..... **C/AS1** 7.3.6, 7.5, 7.6
- building on sloping sites and
buildings of irregular height..... **C/AS1** 7.5.9, 7.5.10, Figure 7.7
- exceptions for SH, SR and SA buildings..... **C/AS1** 7.5.7, 7.5.8, Figure 7.7
- Method 2..... **C/AS1** 7.3.4 a), 7.3.6 to 7.3.8,
7.3.12, 7.5, Figures 7.5 to 7.7, Table 7.2
- Method 3..... **C/AS1** 7.3.4 b), 7.3.8, 7.3.12, 7.6, Figure 7.8
- Method 4..... **C/AS1** 7.3.4 c), 7.3.9, 7.7, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
- Energy cut-offs..... **G12/AS1** 6.4.1 c), 6.5.2
- Energy Efficiency**..... **H1; E3/AS1** 1.1.5;
- building performance index (BPI)..... **NZBC/H1.3.2; H1/VM1** 1.2
- heat gain..... **NZBC/H1.3.3 (d) (f); H1/AS1** 4.0
- heat loss..... **NZBC/H1.3.4**
- heating..... **NZBC/H1.3.2**
- indoor temperature and humidity..... **NZBC/H1.2 (a), H1.3.1**
- Energy efficiency provisions
- airflow control..... **H1/AS1** 3.0
- artificial lighting..... **H1/VM1** 1.3.1, **H1/AS1** 1.0.4, 6.1.1
- building performance index..... **H1/VM1** 1.2, 1.2.1
- hot water systems..... **H1/AS1** 5.0.1
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | internal moisture..... **H1/VM1** 1.2.1, **H1/AS1** 2.1.4
- solar heat gain..... **H1/AS1** 4.0
- Entrances
- principal..... **D1/AS1** 1.1.1
- Environment
- see **Interior Environment**
- Escalators
- see **Mechanical Installations for Access**
- Escape height..... **C/AS1** 2.2.9 a), 3.3.4, 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6, 3.15.7 a),
3.18.1, 4.5.10 b), 5.3.3 c), 7.10.3 Comment
7.9.10, Figure 3.20, Table 4.1
- Escape routes..... **NZBC/F6.2, F6.3.2, F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1** 3.1 to 3.4, 3.6.1,
3.7.1, 3.9.12 to 3.9.14, 3.11.4, 3.17.3, 3.17.5, 4.5.7,
Figures 3.1 to 3.5, Tables 3.1 and 3.2;
D1/AS1 1.1.5; **F8/AS1** 3.0
- see also **Means of Escape**
- accessible..... **C/AS1** 3.3.7, 3.17.5 a)
- doors subdividing escape routes..... **C/AS1** 3.17
- exitways..... **C/AS1** 3.3.2 a), 3.11, 3.12, 6.9.1, 6.16.7, A2.1.1 Type 16,
Figures 3.3 and 3.20, Tables 2.1, 6.1 to 6.3
- external exitways..... **C/AS1** 3.16.4, 5.6.3 c), 7.9.1, 7.9.3
- lighting..... **C/AS1** 3.19.1
- lighting for emergency
- see Fire safety precautions
- pressurisation
- see Fire safety precautions

Escape routes; exitways (continued)

split level exitways	C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
ventilation of enclosed exitways	C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
external	C/AS1 3.14
handrails	C/AS1 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c)
height and width of escape routes	C/AS1 3.3
height	C/AS1 3.3.1
width	C/AS1 3.3.2 to 3.3.5, 3.9.4 to 3.9.6, 3.9.12 e), 3.17.5, Figures 3.3, 3.4 and 3.6, Tables 3.2 and 3.4
length of escape routes	C/AS1 3.4, 3.5, 3.11.7, 6.13.1, Figures 3.7, 3.9 and 3.10, Table 3.3
measurement of travel distance	F6/AS1 Appendix D
number of escape routes	C/AS1 3.2, Figure 3.2, Table 3.1
obstructions	C/AS1 3.3.6, 3.4.2 c), 3.17.5 a) e), 3.18.3
access control systems	C/AS1 3.17.7
chains	C/AS1 3.3.6
crowd control barriers	C/AS1 3.3.6
sliding bars	C/AS1 3.3.6
turnstiles	C/AS1 3.3.6
open paths	C/AS1 2.2.8, 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.1.5, 3.3.2 f), 3.3.7, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.8, 3.9, 3.17.3 a), 3.17.5 a), A2.1.1 Type 16, Figures 3.1, 3.7, 3.9, 3.12 and 3.16, Table 3.3
dead end open paths	C/AS1 1.3.4 Step 2, 3.3.2 b), 3.4.2, 3.5.1, 3.10, 3.14.4, Table 3.3
increases in open path lengths	C/AS1 3.5
intermediate floors	C/AS1 3.3.2 f), 3.4.1 a), 3.4.6, 3.9.13, Figure 3.9
length	C/AS1 1.3.4 Step 2, 2.2.8, 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.4, 3.4.6 to 3.4.8, 3.5, 3.15.1, Figures 3.7 and 3.9, Table 3.3
number of open paths	C/AS1 3.8.1
ramps	C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.9.2, 3.14.7
separation of open paths	C/AS1 3.8.3, Figure 3.12
size of open paths	C/AS1 3.8.1
sloping floors and ceilings	C/AS1 3.4.8 a)
special cases	C/AS1 3.9
aisles	C/AS1 3.9.4 to 3.9.9, Figure 3.15
exception for education buildings	C/AS1 3.8.4
fixed seating	C/AS1 3.9.3, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Table 3.4
ladders	C/AS1 3.10.2
long corridors	C/AS1 6.13, Figure 6.5
loose seating	C/AS1 3.9.10, 3.9.11
separate tenancies	C/AS1 3.9.1
subdivision	C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
unenclosed stairs	C/AS1 3.9.14
protected paths	C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.7.1 a), 3.9.12, 3.9.13, 3.11.1, 3.11.2, 3.15.3 b), 3.16.3, 6.9.1, 6.9.6 a), 6.10.4 a), 6.11.3 b), Figures 3.1, 3.7, 3.8, 3.11, 3.19, 3.28 and 3.30, Tables 2.1 and 6.1
floor area	C/AS1 3.4.3, 3.4.5
length	C/AS1 3.1.3, 3.4.1, 3.4.4, 6.13.1 a), Table 3.3
subdivision	C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
safe paths	C/AS1 3.1.2, 3.4.1 b), 3.7.1, 3.9.14, 3.11.4 to 3.11.6, 3.11.9, 3.14.1, 3.15.3 b), 3.15.6, 3.15.8 a), 3.16.1, 3.16.6, 3.16.8, 3.16.9, 6.9.2 to 6.9.4, 6.10.4 a), 6.22.2 d), 7.2.1 b), 7.7.1, A2.1.1 Type 13 Type 19, Figures 3.1, 3.8, 3.16, 3.19, 3.21, 3.22, 3.24, 3.29 to 3.31 and 5.1, Tables 2.1, 6.1 and 7.4
glazing	C/AS1 5.8, Figure 5.1
horizontal safe paths	C/AS1 3.11.6 a), 3.11.7, 3.11.8, 3.17.9 b), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.8
length restrictions	C/AS1 3.11.7, 3.15.5 c)
permitted activities	C/AS1 3.12.2
subdivision	C/AS1 6.13.1 a)
vertical safe paths	C/AS1 3.11.6 b), 3.11.7, 3.12.3, 3.13, 3.16.3, 3.17.9 b), 3.17.12 a), 3.17.13 e), 6.9.7, 6.9.11, A2.1.1 Type 14, Figure 6.1

Amend 11
Sep 2010 |

Escape routes (continued)

	signs	C/AS1 3.20
	single escape routes	C/AS1 3.15
	active purpose groups	C/AS1 3.15.3, 3.15.4
	basements	C/AS1 3.15.2, Figure 3.19
	bridges	C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.23
	external balconies	C/AS1 3.15.7, Figure 3.22
	external stairways	C/AS1 3.15.7
	intermediate floors	C/AS1 6.22.2 c)
	internal stairs	C/AS1 3.15.6, Figure 3.21
	sleeping purpose groups	C/AS1 3.15.5, Figure 3.21
	split level exitways	C/AS1 3.15.8, Figure 3.24
	stairs	C/AS1 3.15.6, 3.15.7, Figures 3.21 to 3.23
	surface finishes	C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 6.2
	Equipotential bonding	G12/AS1 9.0
	earth bonding conductors	G12/AS1 9.3
	installation of conductors	G12/AS1 9.2
	metallic sanitary fixtures	G12/AS1 9.2.2, Figure 20
	metallic water supply pipes	G12/AS1 9.2.1, Figure 19
	Escape through adjacent firecell	C/AS1 3.9.12, Figure 3.16
	Escape through adjoining building	C/AS1 3.6, Figure 3.11
	Evacuation time	NZBC/F6.3.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Exitways	F7/AS1 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.5 c), 1.5.2, F8/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.3
	pressurisation	F7/AS1 1.3.7
	Explosion	
	see Structure , loads, and Hazardous Substances and Processes	
	Explosives	
	see also Hazardous Substances and Processes , Class 1 Explosives	
	External Moisture	E2
	concealed spaces	NZBC/E2.3.5
Amend 12 Oct 2011	concrete and concrete masonry buildings	E2/AS3 1.0
	elements in contact with the ground	NZBC/E2.3.3
	external walls	NZBC/E2.3.2
	moisture present at completion of construction	NZBC/E2.3.6
Amend 12 Oct 2011	qualifications	E2/AS1 1.5, 8.2.2, 8.3.2, 8.4.2, 8.5.2, 9.2.3, 9.3.4.1, 9.4.3, 9.5.3, 9.6.2, 9.7.2.1, 9.8.3, 9.9.2
	roofs	NZBC/E2.3.1, E2.3.2
	scope	E2/VM1 1.2, E2/AS1 1.0
	construction excluded	E2/AS1 1.2
	acoustics	E2/AS1 1.2.3
	commercial and industrial roofing	E2/VM1 3.0
	outbuildings	E2/AS1 1.2.1
	skillion roofs	E2/VM1 3.0
	spread of flame	E2/AS1 1.2.2
	attached garages	E2/AS1 1.1
	construction included	E2/AS1 1.1
	provisions for snow	E2/AS1 1.3
	qualifications	E2/AS1 1.5
	specific design	E2/AS1 1.4
	windows and doors	E2/AS1 9.1.10.1
	snow	NZBC/E2.3.1
	suspended floors	NZBC/E2.3.4

External Moisture *(continued)*

	Verification Method.....	E2/VM1 1.0, 2.0, 3.0, Appendix 1
	commercial and industrial roofing.....	E2/VM1 3.0
	general.....	E2/VM1 1.1
Amend 12	pitched roofing systems.....	E2/VM1 2.0
Oct 2011	pro-forma for test details	E2/VM1 1.6, Appendix 1
	scope	E2/VM1 1.2
	skillion roofs.....	E2/VM1 1.4
	specimen details	E2/VM1 1.3
	test procedure	E2/VM1 1.4
	preconditioning	E2/VM1 1.4.1
	Series 1 Cyclic Pressure Water Penetration	E2/VM1 1.4.3
	Series 1 Static Pressure Water Penetration	E2/VM1 1.4.2
	Series 2 'Water Management Testing'	E2/VM1 1.4.4
Amend 12	Series 3 'Wetwall Test'	E2/VM1 1.4.5
Oct 2011	transition period.....	E2/VM1 1.5
	External walls.....	C/AS1 3.14.3, 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 6.12.7, 7.1.1, 7.3, 7.4.1, 7.5 to 7.7, 7.8.7, 7.9.7, 7.9.10, 7.9.11, 7.10, 7.11.2, Figures 6.11, 6.12, 7.1, 7.3 and 7.11, Table 7.5
	cladding	C/AS1 7.9.18, 7.11.2, 7.11.3, C9.1, Table 7.5
	fire resistance ratings.....	C/AS1 3.14.5, 3.14.6, 5.7.5, 5.7.6, 7.3.10, 7.4.3, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.9, 7.9.13, 7.10
	firecell separation.....	C/AS1 7.3, 7.8 to 7.10, Figures 7.1 to 7.12, Tables 7.1 to 7.4
	glazing.....	C/AS1 7.3.3 c), 7.3.5 to 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
	return walls.....	C/AS1 7.3.3 e), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Figure 7.9, Tables 7.3 and 7.4
	surface finishes	C/AS1 7.1.2 c), 7.11.2 to 7.11.3
	wing walls.....	C/AS1 7.3.3 d), 7.3.9, 7.7, 7.10.4, Tables 7.3 and 7.4

F

F rating

see Fire resistance ratings

Factories

see Industrial buildings

Falsework

see **Structure**

Farm buildings

see Buildings, farm buildings

Fascias

see Gutters, barges and fascias

FHC

see Fire hazard category

FI

see Flammability indexFibre cement sheet **E2/AS1** 9.3.6.2, 9.7decorative attachments **E2/AS1** 9.7.8flush-finished systems **E2/AS1** 9.7.4, Figures 111-114control joints **E2/AS1** 9.7.4.1, Table 19, Figure 111finishes **E2/AS1** 9.7.4.2jointed systems **E2/AS1** 9.7.3, Figures 104A-108paint finish **E2/AS1** 9.7.3.1limitations **E2/AS1** 9.7.1material and installation **E2/AS3** 9.7.2installation **E2/AS1** 9.7.2 1, Tables 23 and 24parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.7.7flush-finished topped balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.7.7.1, Figure 117soffit details **E2/AS1** 9.7.5, Figures 8A and 114windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.7.6, Figures 115 and 116Amend 12
Oct 2011Fibre cement weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.5installation **E2/AS1** 9.5.3, Table 23external corners **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.3, Figure 88fixings **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.1, Table 24internal corners **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.4, Figure 89laps and joints **E2/AS1** 9.5.3.2, Figure 87limitations **E2/AS1** 9.5.1material performance **E2/AS1** 9.5.2parapets and enclosed balustrades **E2/AS1** 9.5.5protective coating **E2/AS1** 9.5.6windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.5.4windows – direct fixed **E2/AS1** 9.5.4.1, Figures 17D and 90windows – on cavity **E2/AS1** 9.5.4.2, Figures 17C and 91Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 12
Oct 2011Amend 12
Oct 2011

Filters

see StrainersFinal exits **C/AS1** 3.1.2, 3.1.3, 3.14.5, 3.16.4, 3.17.1 c), 3.18.1, 6.20.18 a), Figures 3.1, 3.2, 3.12, 3.19, 3.24 and 3.31, Table 6.1; **F8/AS1** 3.1.1 a) b), 3.2.3 a)

- Fire alarm systems
see Fire safety precautions
- Fire engineering design **F7/AS1** 1.1.7, 1.4.1
- Fire fighting facilities **C/AS1** 8.2
- Fire hazard categories (FHC) **C/AS1** 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.2.1, 3.12.2 d), 3.12.3 c), 3.15.2 b),
3.15.3 a), 4.2.3, 5.4.1 f) j), 6.6.7, 6.20.7, 6.20.15 a),
6.21.5 a), 6.22.1, 7.1.3, 7.3.2 b), 7.5.2, 7.5.3 Step 4,
7.7.5 Step 5, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, 7.8.9 c) d), 7.10.5 a),
Figures 3.19, 3.20, 1 and 7.10 Note 3,
Tables 2.1, 5.1, 7.1 to 7.4
- category 4 buildings **C/AS1** 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13, 7.8.1, 7.8.2, Table 2.1
- Fire load energy density (FLED) **C/AS1** 2.2.1 comments, 2.2.10, Table 5
- Fire resistance ratings (FRR) **C/AS1** 1.3.2 Step 8, 1.3.4 Steps 4 and 6,
1.3.5 b), 3.6.1 c), 3.14.6 c), 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 5.1, 5.2,
5.9.5 a) b), 5.9.6, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6.1, 6.6.2, 6.6.5 to 6.6.7,
6.7.1, 6.7.2, 6.7.5, 6.7.6, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1,
6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.14, 6.15,
6.16.2, 6.17.2, 6.18.8, 6.19.14, 7.2.1, 7.4.3, 7.8.1 a),
7.8.2 to 7.8.6, 7.8.10 b) c), 7.9.3, 7.9.4, 7.9.8 b),
7.9.13, 7.10, C7.1.1, Figure 7.10, Table 6.1
- application of F and S ratings **C/AS1** 5.3
- applying FRRs to building elements **C/AS1** 5.7
- concessions for multiple purpose groups **C/AS1** 5.6.7, 5.6.8
- determining F and S ratings **C/AS1** 5.4, 5.5
- determining the FRR **C/AS1** 5.6
- fire resistance tests **C/AS1** 5.9.6, C7.1.1
- firecell rating (F) **C/AS1** 3.16.6, 4.1.2, 4.3.2, 4.4.1 Step 5, 4.5.7, 4.5.14, 5.2.2,
5.3.1, 5.4, 5.5.1, 5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 6.15.1, 6.16.2,
6.20.15, 7.2.1 a), 7.10.2, 7.10.3, Table 4.1
- firecells rated F0 **C/AS1** 6.2
- floors **C/AS1** 3.14.6 c), 4.3.2, 5.6.4 d), 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.14, 6.15, 7.8.6
- insulation rating **C/AS1** 5.1.1 c), 5.6.4 to 5.6.6,
5.8.10, 6.19.13, 7.8.1 a), Table 6.1 Notes
- integrity rating **C/AS1** 5.1.1 b), 5.6.6, 5.8.2, 7.4.3
- intermediate floors **C/AS1** 4.5.16, 6.14.3
- minimum FRRs **C/AS1** 5.7.9
- open sided buildings **C/AS1** 7.8.10 b) c), Figure 7.10
- reductions for sprinklered firecells **C/AS1** 5.6.6
- roofs **C/AS1** 7.8.1, 7.9.3, 7.9.8 b), Figures 7.1 and 7.11
- small buildings **C/AS1** 7.10.5
- stability rating **C/AS1** 5.1.1 a), 5.6.6, 5.9.4, 5.9.5
- structural fire endurance rating (S) **C/AS1** 2.2.10, 4.1.2, 4.2.3,
5.2.2, 5.3.2, 5.4, 5.5.2, 5.5.3,
5.6.5, 5.6.9 a), 5.6.11, 6.10.5, 7.2.1,
7.4.3, 7.8.1 a), 7.8.5, 7.8.6, 7.10.2,
7.10.5, 7.10.8, Table 5.1
- Fire resisting closures **C/AS1** 6.18.9, 6.19, C7.1.1, C8.1.1, Table 6.1
- access panels **C/AS1** 6.19.12
- fire curtains **C/AS1** 6.19.9, 6.19.10
- fire dampers **C/AS1** 6.3.2 f), 6.16.4 d), 6.19.14
- fire doors
see Doors
- fire shutters **C/AS1** 6.19.15 to 6.19.17
- lift landing doors
see Doors
- smoke control doors
see Doors

Fire safety

see **Means of Escape, Outbreak of Fire, Spread of Fire, Structural Stability during Fire**

- Fire safety precautions (FSP) **C/AS1** 1.2.3, 1.3.2 Step 6, 2.3.1, 3.1.5, 4.2.6, 4.2.7, 4.3.1, 4.4.1, 4.5, 5.6.8, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, Appendix A, Table 4.1
- Amend 11 | automatic fire alarm system with modified smoke **C/AS1** 3.5.4, 4.5.4,
Sep 2010 | detection and manual call points (Type 5) 4.5.10, Table 4.1
- domestic (Type 1)..... **C/AS1** A2.1.1
- emergency electrical power supply
(Type 17)..... **C/AS1** 6.23.1 d), 6.23.3, 6.23.4, A2.1
- emergency lighting (Type 16) **C/AS1** 3.19.2, 6.23.3 c), 6.23.4, A2.1
- emergency lighting in exitways **F7/AS1** 1.5.2
- fire alarm systems
- activation of system **F7/AS1** 2.1.1
- Amend 11 | automatic **F7/AS1** 1.1.3, 1.2.3 to 1.2.7
Sep 2010 | heat detectors **F7/AS1** 1.2.3, 1.2.5, 1.2.6, 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 1.3.4, 1.3.5
- high sensitivity smoke detection **F7/AS1** 1.1.7
- installation and maintenance..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6,
1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
- manual (Type 2) **C/AS1** 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1; **F7/AS1** 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2
- means of communication with the Fire Service
see Alerting the Fire Service
- modified smoke detection **F7/AS1** 1.2.5 to 1.2.7
- requirements **F7/AS1** 2.1
- smoke detectors..... **F7/AS1** 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
- substitution of smoke detectors by heat detectors..... **F7/AS1** 1.3.5
- fire hose reels (Type 14)..... **C/AS1** 8.2.2, A2.1
- fire hydrant systems (Type 18) **C/AS1** 8.2.1, A2.1
- Fire Service lift controls (Type 15)..... **C/AS1** 8.2.5, A2.1; **F7/AS1** 1.5.2
- fire sprinklers (Type 6) **C/AS1** 3.9.12 f), 3.15.3 a), 3.15.6,
3.15.7 a), 4.1.1 a), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 5.6.13,
6.3.2 a) d), 6.6.8, 6.16.7, 6.18.10,
6.19.9, A2.1, Appendix D, Figure 7.2
- concessions for sprinklers **C/AS1** 3.3.2 c), 3.4.8 d), 3.5.2, 3.14.3, 3.15.3 a),
3.15.6, 3.15.7 a), 3.16.3 b), 4.2.5, 5.5.3, 5.6.6,
5.6.7 b), 5.6.8, 5.8.7, 5.8.8, 6.3.1, 6.5.1, 6.7.2,
6.9.6 d), 6.9.11, 6.10.5, 6.13.1, 6.20.5, 6.20.10,
6.20.15 a), 6.22.3 a), 7.2.2, 7.3.12, 7.7.6,
7.9.3, 7.9.10, 8.1.1 e), Tables 4.1 Note 5, 6.2
- residential **C/AS1** D3.1
- with smoke detectors (Type 7) **C/AS1** 3.12.2 b), 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g), A2.1
- Amend 11 | fire sprinkler systems
Sep 2010 | automatic **F7/AS1** 1.2.5, 1.2.8, 1.3.2, 1.3.4
- with smoke detectors **F7/AS1** 1.2.9
- fire systems centre (Type 20) **C/AS1** 8.2.3, 8.2.4, A2.1
- heat detectors (Type 3)..... **C/AS1** 3.5.3, 3.5.5, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11,
6.10.4 c), 6.11.3 b), A2.1
- hold-open devices..... **F7/AS1** 1.3.6, 1.5.2
- manual (Type 2)..... **C/AS1** 4.5.3, 4.5.9, 4.5.10 b), A2.1
- mechanical smoke extract **F7/AS1** 1.3.8, 1.5.2
- mechanical smoke extract (Type 11) **C/AS1** 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5,
6.22.7 c), 6.22.8 c), 6.22.11, 6.22.12,
6.22.14, A2.1, B3.1.1, Table 6.6
- modified smoke/heat detection (Type 5) **C/AS1** 3.5.4, A2.1
- natural smoke venting **F7/AS1** 1.3.8, 1.5.2
- natural smoke venting (Type 10)..... **C/AS1** 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 6.21.5, 6.22.7 b),
6.22.8 b) c), 6.22.10, 6.22.14, A2.1,
B3.1.1, Table 6.5
- pressurisation of safe paths (Type 13)..... **C/AS1** 3.7.1 b), 3.11.6 b), 6.9.6,
6.9.11, 6.13.1, 6.19.4 c), 6.21.2, 6.23.1 b),
A2.1, B1.1.1, Table 6.1 Note 2;
F7/AS1 1.3.7, 1.5.2
- refuge areas (Type 19) **C/AS1** 3.13, A2.1, Figure 3.17

Fire safety precautions (FSP) (continued)

- smoke control in air-handling systems (Type 9) **C/AS1** 6.23.2, A2.1; **F7/AS1** 1.5.2, 1.5.3
- smoke detectors **F7/AS1** 1.1.6, 1.2.4, 1.2.9, 1.3, 1.4.1, 1.5.3
- smoke detectors (Type 4) **C/AS1** 3.5.4, 3.5.5, 3.12.2 b), 3.17.10, 4.5.4, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.22.2 g), 6.22.14, 6.23.1, A2.1, B1.1.1
- voice communication system (Type 8) **C/AS1** 3.16.3 d), 8.2.6, A2.1
- Fire separations **C/AS1** 1.3.5 b), 3.11.9, 4.1.1 a), 5.1.1, 5.3.1, 5.3.2 d) e), 5.6.3, 5.6.4 a), 5.6.5 c), 5.6.7, 5.7.2, 5.7.4, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 6.6, 6.7, 6.8.1, 6.9.2, 6.9.3, 6.10.1, 6.10.2, 6.10.5, 6.11.1, 6.11.2, 6.12, 6.14.1, 6.14.4, 6.15.1 a), 6.17, 6.18.4, 6.18.7 to 6.18.10, 7.2.1, 7.2.2, Table 6.1
- junctions **C/AS1** 6.12.4 to 6.12.7, 6.12.9, 6.18.4, Figure 6.4
- protected shafts **C/AS1** 6.16, Figure 6.8
- Fire Service **C/AS1** 4.2.6 c), 5.9.3 f), 6.21.2, 6.22.12 b), Part 8, A2.1.1 Type 15 and Type 20; **F7/AS1** 1.2.2, 2.1.2 a), 2.2
- see also* Alerting the Fire Service
- installation and maintenance **F7/AS1** 1.1.3, 1.1.5, 1.2.6, 1.2.7, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
- manual **F7/AS1** 1.1.1, 1.1.2, 1.2.2
- means of communication with **C/AS1** A1.3.1, A2.1.1 Type 2 and Type 7 requirements **F7/AS1** 2.1
- activation of system **F7/AS1** 2.1.1
- smoke detectors **F7/AS1** 1.2.5, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5.3
- vehicular access **C/AS1** 8.1.1, 8.1.2
- Fire shutters
see Fire resisting closures
- Fire spread
 - horizontal **C/AS1** 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 b), 7.3, 7.8
 - vertical **C/AS1** 4.1.1 b), 7.1.1 a), 7.9
 - between different levels of the same building **C/AS1** 7.9.10 to 7.9.15
 - external thermal insulation **C/AS1** 7.9.18, 7.9.19, Figure 7.12
 - from an adjacent lower roof **C/AS1** 7.9.6 to 7.9.9, Figure 7.11
 - roof car parking and storage **C/AS1** 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Fire stopping **C/AS1** 6.12.5, 6.12.7 a), 6.12.9, 6.17, 6.18.1, 6.18.4, C6.1.1, C6.1.2, Figures 6.4, 6.9 and 6.11
- cavity barriers **C/AS1** 6.18.4, 6.18.6, Figure 6.12
- curtain walls **C/AS1** 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
- external thermal insulation **C/AS1** 7.9.18, Figure 7.12
- hollow construction **C/AS1** 6.17.5, Figure 6.12
- protected shafts **C/AS1** 3.12.3 e), 6.16.3, 6.16.4 e), Figure 6.8
- service outlets **C/AS1** 6.17.6, Figure 6.9
- Firecell rating (F)
see Fire resistance ratings
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 | Firecells **F7/AS1** 1.2.5, 1.2.7, 1.3.1, 1.3.4, 1.3.5
- basements **C/AS1** 3.7, 4.5.15, 6.14.4
- buildings remaining occupied during fire **C/AS1** 5.6.9, 5.6.10
- car parking **C/AS1** 6.10.3 to 6.10.6
- ceiling space firecells **C/AS1** 6.12.8
- concealed spaces **C/AS1** 6.18.2, 6.18.3
- concessions for multiple purpose groups **C/AS1** 5.6.7, 5.6.8
- construction **C/AS1** 6.12
- fire hazard category 4 **C/AS1** 2.2.10, 5.6.11 to 5.6.13
- fire safety precautions
see Fire safety precautions
- firecells rated F0 **C/AS1** 6.2
- floor area limits **C/AS1** 4.2.3 to 4.2.5
- group sleeping areas **C/AS1** 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.5
- intermediate floors **C/AS1** 4.5.16 to 4.5.18, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3 to 6.21.6, Figure 6.6, Tables 6.5 and 6.6

Firecells (continued)

	limited area atriums.....	C/AS1 6.22, Figure 6.14, Tables 6.4 to 6.6
	plant, boiler and incinerator rooms	C/AS1 6.11.3, 6.11.4
	protected shafts	C/AS1 6.16
	provision of firecells	C/AS1 4.2
	roofs	C/AS1 7.8.1 to 7.8.5, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9
	solid waste storage	C/AS1 6.10.2
	suites	C/AS1 2.2.9, 3.15.5, 6.6.5, 6.7.6, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, A2.1.1 Type 5
	top floor firecells	C/AS1 4.5.14
	Fireplace.....	C/AS1 9.1 to 9.3, Figures 9.1 and 9.3, Table 9.1
	Fire Safety	C/AS1, C/VM1
	Fixings	E2/AS1 4.4, 8.1.4, 8.2.4, 8.3.7, 8.4.8, 8.4.8.1, 8.4.9, 8.4.9.1, 9.4.3.1, 9.4.4.3, 9.4.5.2, 9.5.3.1, 9.6.6, 9.7.3.1, 9.8.3.1, 9.9.4.1, Tables 14, 15, 20-22, 24, Figures 39 and 40
	Fixtures	
	sanitary fixtures	
	see Personal Hygiene	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Flame barriers	C/AS1 3.14.6 b) c), 6.18.5 c), 6.20.12 a), 6.20.13, 6.20.14 b), C9.1, Table 6.3
	Flammability index (FI).....	C/AS1 C3.1, Table 6.2
	Flammable liquids	
	see Hazardous Substances and Processes , Class 3 flammable liquids	
	Flammable solids	
	see Hazardous Substances and Processes , Class 4 flammable solids	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Flashings	E2/AS1 4.0, 8.2.4, 8.2.6, 8.3.8, 8.4.11, 8.4.11.1, 8.4.12, 9.2.4, 9.6.7, Tables 20-22, Figures 5 and 6
	apron flashings	E2/AS1 5.1, 8.4.12 b), Figures 7, 35 and 44
Amend 12 Oct 2011	fixings	E2/AS1 4.4, Tables 20-22
	head flashings	E2/AS1 9.1.10.4, Table 7
	jamb flashings	E2/AS1 9.1.10.6
Amend 12 Oct 2011	materials.....	E2/AS1 4.1, 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.2.2, 4.3, 9.8.5, Tables 20-22
	aluminium	E2/AS1 4.3.2
	aluminium-zinc coated steel.....	E2/AS1 4.3.4
	bituminous.....	E2/AS1 4.3.10
	butyl rubber	E2/AS1 4.3.9
	copper.....	E2/AS1 4.3.6
	EPDM	E2/AS1 4.3.9
	flexible flashing tape	E2/AS1 4.3.11
	galvanised steel.....	E2/AS1 4.3.3
	lead sheet	E2/AS1 4.3.7
	stainless steel.....	E2/AS1 4.3.5
	uPVC.....	E2/AS1 4.3.1
	zinc sheet.....	E2/AS1 4.3.8
Amend 12 Oct 2011	overlaps and upstands	E2/AS1 4.6, Table 7
	overlap with roof claddings	E2/AS1 4.6.1
	apron flashing cover over metal roofing	E2/AS1 4.6.1.1
	barges.....	E2/AS1 4.6.1.5, Figure 47, Table 7
	change in metal roof pitches.....	E2/AS1 4.6.1.3, Figure 44, Table 7
	inter-storey junctions.....	E2/AS1 4.6.1.7, Figure 70, Table 7
	parallel flashing.....	E2/AS1 4.6.1.1, Figures 47 and 48
	ridges and hips	E2/AS1 4.6.1.2, Figure 46, Table 7
	roof- or deck-to-wall junctions	E2/AS1 4.6.1.4, Figure 7, Table 7
	transverse flashing	E2/AS1 4.6.1.1, Figure 7, Table 7
Amend 12 Oct 2011	window and door heads.....	E2/AS1 4.6.1.6, Figures 71 and 81, Table 7
	requirements	E2/AS1 4.5
	edge treatments.....	E2/AS1 4.5.1, Figure 5
Amend 12 Oct 2011	metal flashing joints	E2/AS1 4.5.2, Figure 6

- Flats
see Housing, multi-unit dwelling
- FLED
see Fire load energy density
- Flooding
flood risk assessment **E1/VM1** 3.2.2
history of **E1/AS1** 1.0.1
protection from **E1/VM1** 3.2.2
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | Floors **NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), D1.3.3 (e), D1.3.4 (c), E2.3.3, E2.3.4, G6.3.1, G6.3.2;**
F7/AS1 1.1.2; **G3/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3,
2.3.4, 2.3.5, 2.3.6
basement floors **C/AS1** 3.3.2 i), 3.15.2, 6.14.4, Figure 3.19
concealed spaces **C/AS1** 6.18.4, 6.18.5 a), 6.18.10
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | fire resistance ratings **C/AS1** 3.14.6 c), 4.1.1 a), 4.3.2, 4.5.7, 5.3.1, 5.6.4 d),
5.6.8, 5.7.3, 6.10.3, 6.12.2, 6.14.2 to 6.14.4, 6.15.1
floor projections **C/AS1** 7.8.6, 7.9.13
flooring materials **C/AS1** 6.20.8, 6.20.14
intermediate floors **C/AS1** 3.3.2 f), 3.4.6, 3.9.13, 4.5.16 to 4.5.18,
5.6.4 d), 5.6.5 b), 6.10.3, 6.14.1 a), 6.14.3, 6.21.3, 6.22,
A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11, B4.1.1, Figures 3.9 and 6.6,
Tables 6.4 to 6.6
limited area intermediate floors **C/AS1** 4.5.17, 6.21.4 a), 6.21.5, 6.21.6
lower floors **C/AS1** 3.16.9, 4.5.10, 4.5.11, 6.7.7, 6.9.3, Figure 3.5
more than one purpose group on a floor **C/AS1** 4.5.1 to 4.5.6, 5.6.11
other floors in a building **C/AS1** 4.5.8 to 4.5.11
same purpose group on different floors **C/AS1** 4.5.13
sloping floors and ceilings **C/AS1** 3.4.8 a)
subfloor spaces **C/AS1** 6.15.1, 6.18.5 a), Figure 6.7
top floor firecells **C/AS1** 4.5.14
upper floors **C/AS1** 3.15.3 b), 3.16.3 a), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 6.7.7,
6.8.2, 6.8.6, 7.5.7, Figure 3.5
wooden floors **C/AS1** 6.12.6, 6.20.14
floor/ceiling assemblies **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 3
floor/wall junctions **G6/AS1** 1.0.3, Figure 5
minimum floor level **E1/AS1** 2.0, Figures 1 and 2
moisture **NZBC/E2.3.4**
slip resistant **NZBC/D1.3.3 (d); G15/AS1** 3.0.2
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 | Floor outlets **G13/AS1** 3.4
Floor wastes **E3/AS1** 2.0.1, 2.2, Figure 4

Flues.....	NZBC/G11.3.3; G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4; G11/AS1 5.0
fire damper.....	G11/AS1 5.3
gas burning appliances.....	C/AS1 9.2
locations on dwellings.....	G4/AS1 2.4
materials.....	G11/AS1 5.1
oil fired appliances.....	C/AS1 9.3
safety devices.....	G11/AS1 5.2
solid fuel appliances.....	C/AS1 9.1
Foamed plastics building materials.....	C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.5 6.20.11 to 6.20.13, 7.9.18, Figure 7.12, Table 6.3
Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination.....	G3
cooking.....	NZBC/G3.3.1 (c); G3/AS1 1.2.1, 1.4.1
energy supply.....	NZBC/G3.3.3
location.....	NZBC/G3.3.4
people with disabilities.....	NZBC/G3.3.5
preparation.....	NZBC/G3.3.1 (b) (d), G3.3.2
prevention of contamination.....	NZBC/G3.3.6
rinsing.....	G3/AS1 1.1.1
storage.....	NZBC/G3.3.1 (a); G3/AS1 1.3.1
refrigeration.....	G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.4.1
ventilation.....	G3/AS1 1.3.2, 1.3.3, 1.3.4
surfaces.....	G3/AS1 1.1.2, 1.1.3, Figure 1
utensil washing.....	NZBC/G3.3.1 (b), G3.3.2
Foul Water.....	G13
<i>see also</i> Discharge pipes, Drains, Sanitary appliances, Sanitary fixtures, Vent pipes, Water seals, Water traps	
gravity flow.....	NZBC/G13.3.1 (a), G13.3.2 (a)
odours.....	NZBC/G13.1 (b), G13.3.1 (c), G13.3.2 (e); G13/AS1 3.1.1
offensive matter.....	NZBC/G13.1 (b)
on-site disposal systems.....	NZBC/G13.3.4
<i>see also</i> Industrial Liquid Waste	
outfalls.....	NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.2
personal hygiene.....	NZBC/G13.1 (a)
plumbing system.....	NZBC/G13.2, G13.3.1
sewer.....	NZBC/G13.3.3, G13.3.4, G15.3.3
three storey buildings.....	G13/AS1 Figure 7
Amend 11 Foundations.....	B1/VM4
<i>see also</i> Chimneys, foundations	
design parameters	
continuous vibration.....	B1/VM4 1.0.6
depth.....	B1/VM4 2.0.4
ground stability.....	B1/VM4 1.0.4
long-term loading.....	B1/VM4 2.0.6
short-term loading.....	B1/VM4 2.0.6
serviceability deformations.....	B1/VM4 1.0.3, Appendix B
pile foundations.....	B1/VM4 4.0
belled piles.....	B1/VM4 4.0.3 b), 5.1.2
bulbed piles.....	B1/VM4 4.0.3 c)
concrete piles	
cast-in-situ.....	B1/VM4 3.4.4
precast.....	B1/VM4 3.4.4, 5.1.1
downdrag.....	B1/VM4 4.5
nominal width.....	B1/VM4 4.0.3, 4.2.2, 4.6.1
notation.....	B1/VM4 4.1.1, Table 2
pile driving.....	B1/VM4 5.1.1
pile driving formula.....	B1/VM4 4.0.1
pile groups	
design pile lateral strength.....	B1/VM4 4.0.4
design pile vertical strength.....	B1/VM4 4.0.4
ultimate lateral strength.....	B1/VM4 4.6.1, Table 3
ultimate vertical strength.....	B1/VM4 4.4.1

Foundations (continued)

- single piles
- base resistance **B1/VM4** 4.1.3, Figures 3 and 4
 - column action **B1/VM4** 4.2
 - design pile lateral strength **B1/VM4** 4.0.4
 - design pile vertical strength **B1/VM4** 4.0.4
 - lateral strength **B1/VM4** 4.3
 - drained cohesionless soil **B1/VM4** 4.3.4
 - free head pile **B1/VM4** 4.3.2 a), 4.3.3 a), 4.3.4 a)
 - restrained head pile **B1/VM4** 4.3.2 b), 4.3.3 b), 4.3.4 b)
 - undrained cohesive soil **B1/VM4** 4.3.2
 - undrained consolidated soil **B1/VM4** 4.3.3
 - shaft resistance **B1/VM4** 4.1.4, Figure 5, Table 2
 - ultimate axial compression **B1/VM4** 4.0.1 to 4.0.3
 - vertical strength **B1/VM4** 4.1.2
 - strength reduction factors **B1/VM4** 4.7, Table 4
 - types
 - concrete **B1/VM4** 5.1.1, 5.1.2
 - steel **B1/VM4** 5.2.1, 5.2.2
 - timber **B1/VM4** 5.3
 - shallow foundations **B1/VM4** 3.0
 - concrete slab-on-ground **B1/AS1** 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, **B1/AS3** 1.3
 - design bearing pressure **B1/VM4** 3.2.1, 3.2.4
 - design bearing strength **B1/VM4** 3.2.3
 - design sliding resistance **B1/VM4** 3.4.6
 - local shear **B1/VM4** 3.3.3
 - moment loading **B1/VM4** 3.1.4
 - notation **B1/VM4** 3.3.1, Figures 1 and 2
 - soils **B1/VM4** 3.1.2, 3.4.3
 - strength reduction factors **B1/VM4** 3.5,
 - surcharge **B1/VM4** 3.1.3
 - ultimate bearing strength **B1/VM4** 3.1.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
 - ultimate sliding resistance **B1/VM4** 3.4.2
 - ultimate sliding strength **B1/VM4** 3.4.4, 3.4.5
- see also Chimneys, foundations
- FRR
see Fire resistance ratings
- FSP
see Fire safety precautions

Amend 12
Oct 2011

G

- Garages
see Outbuildings
- Gas **G3/AS1** 1.4.1
- Gas as an Energy Source** **G11**
- automatic cut-offs **NZBC/G11.3.2**
 - flued appliances **NZBC/G11.3.3**
 - gas supply authority **NZBC/G11.3.6**
 - isolation devices **NZBC/G11.3.4**
 - meters **NZBC G11.3.6**
 - location **G11/AS1** 8.0
 - over pressure protection **G11/AS1** 3.0
 - safe pressure ranges **NZBC/G11.3.1**
 - service risers **NZBC/G11.3.6**
 - supply system **NZBC/G11.2, G11.3.1, G11.3.5**
- Gas burning appliances
 installation **C/AS1** 9.2
 seismic restraint **C/AS1** 9.2.2
- Gases
see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 2 gases
- Gas fuel appliances **G4/AS1** 2.0, 3.0
- Gas reticulation
- another Acceptable Solution **G10/AS1** 5.0
 - cleaning **G10/AS1** 1.1
 - tailpipes **G10/AS1** 1.1.3
 - concealed piping **G10/AS1** 1.4
 - in concrete **G10/AS1** 1.4.1
 - in enclosed spaces **G10/AS1** 1.4.2
 - underground **G10/AS1** 1.4.3, Table 3
 - construction **G10/AS1** 1.0
 - corrosion control **G10/AS1** 3.0
 - design **G10/AS1** 1.0.1 a)
 - installation **G10/AS1** 1.2
 - bends and offsets **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 d)
 - risers **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 c)
 - separation **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 b)
 - supports **G10/AS1** 1.2.1 a), Table 2
 - isolating valves **G10/AS1** 2.0
 - materials **G10/AS1** 1.0.1 b), Table 1
 - pipework in ducts **G10/AS1** 1.5
 - unventilated ducts **G10/AS1** 1.5.4
 - ventilated ducts **G10/AS1** 1.5.3
 - vent lines **G10/AS1** 4.0, Tables 4 and 5
 - welded joints **G10/AS1** 1.3
- Geology **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 a)
- Glazing **NZBC/F2.3.3; B1/AS1 7.0; C/AS1** 5.8, 6.19.11
see also **Hazardous Building Materials**
- concession for sprinklers **C/AS1** 5.8.7, 5.8.8
 - dimensions **C/AS1** 5.8.3 to 5.8.5
 - fire resisting glazing **C/AS1** 5.8.1, 5.8.2, 7.3.3 c),
 7.3.5, 7.3.7, 7.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
 - human impact safety **F2/AS1** 1.1
 - in external walls **C/AS1** 5.8.2 a)
 - in fire doors **C/AS1** 5.8.10
 - in fire separations **C/AS1** 5.8.1, 5.8.2
 - in safe paths **C/AS1** 5.8.1 c), 5.8.3 to 5.8.8, Figure 5.1
 - in smoke control doors **C/AS1** 5.8.10, 5.8.11
 - in smoke separations and protected paths **C/AS1** 5.8.9
 - modifications to NZS 4223 **F2/AS1** 1.2

	Government agencies.....	NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
	<i>see also</i> Commercial buildings	
	Government offices.....	NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv)
	<i>see also</i> Commercial buildings	
	Grease traps.....	G13/AS2 3.4
	capacity.....	G13/AS2 3.4.3, 3.4.4
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Ground	
	good ground.....	B1/AS2 2.1, 3.1, 4.1, B1/AS3 1.3.2
	Ground conditions.....	B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendix A
	Groundwater.....	B1/VM4 1.0.2, Appendices A, B; G14/VM1 1.6.1
	conditions.....	B1/VM4 1.0.2
	seasonal changes.....	B1/VM4 A1.2.1
	tidal changes.....	B1/VM4 A1.2.1
	Group sleeping areas.....	C/AS1 6.6.3, 6.6.4, 6.6.7, 6.7.2 to 6.7.4
	Gully traps.....	G13/AS1 Figures 5 and 7, G13/AS2 3.3, Figures 2 and 3
	construction.....	G13/AS2 3.3.1, Figure 4
	overflow relief.....	G13/AS2 3.3.2
	pipe diameters.....	G13/AS2 3.3.1
	Gutters.....	E1/AS1 5.0
	gradients.....	E1/AS1 5.3
	materials.....	E1/AS1 5.2, Table 6
	overflow outlets.....	E1/AS1 5.5
	sizing.....	E1/AS1 5.1, Figures 15 and 16
	thermal movement.....	E1/AS1 5.4, Table 7
	Gutters, barges, and fascias.....	E2/AS1 5.2, 8.1.6, 8.3.9, 8.4.14, 8.5.10, Figures 20 and 64
	internal gutters.....	E2/AS1 8.1.6.1, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
Amend 12 Oct 2011	parallel hidden gutters.....	E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
	valley gutters.....	E2/AS1 8.1.6.2, 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figures 37 and 51

H

- Habitable spaces..... **NZBC/E3.3.1, G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1, G5.3.3, G6.2, G7.2; G6/AS1 1.0.2**
- Halls
 see Communal non-residential
- Halls of residence
 see Communal residential
- Handicapped people
 see People with disabilities
- Handrails **NZBC/D1.3.3 (j) (k), D1.3.4 (i); C/AS1 3.1.4, 3.3.3, 3.3.6 b), 3.9.8, 6.20.4 c) ; D1/AS1 1.5.2, 1.5.4 b), 1.6.1, 1.7, 5.2.1 g), 6.0, 6.0.1, 6.0.2, Figures 6 and 19**
 clearances **D1/AS1 6.0.7, Figure 26**
 handrail profiles **D1/AS1 6.0.7 to 6.0.9, Figure 26**
 height **D1/AS1 6.0.6, Figure 25**
 horizontal extensions **D1/AS1 6.0.4, 6.0.5, Figure 25**
 intermediate handrails **D1/AS1 6.0.2**
 relevant width **D1/AS1 6.0.9, Figure 26**
 slope **D1/AS1 6.0.4**
- Hazards to building elements **F1/VM1 2.7**
- Hazardous Agents on Site..... F1**
 see also Site investigation
 assessment of sites **NZBC/F1.3.1**
 contaminants..... **F1/VM1 1.0.2 c, 2.1.2, 2.2.1 g), 2.2.2, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.6.2, 2.6.3, Table 2**
 degradation of building materials **F1/VM1 2.7**
 likely effects on people **NZBC/F1.3.2**
 hazardous agents **F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 2.5.1, 2.5.5, Table 2**
 network utility operators **F1/VM1 2.1.1 f)**
 remedial work **F1/VM1 2.6, Table 3**
 risk assessment **F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.5, 2.5.4**
- Hazardous Building Materials F2**
 see also Glazing
 asbestos **F2/AS1 2.0**
 brittle materials **NZBC/F2.3.3**
 harmful concentrations **NZBC/F2.3.1**
 transparent panels..... **NZBC/F2.3.2**
- Hazard category
 see Fire hazard categories
- Hazardous Substances and Processes..... F3**
 Class 1 **F3/VM1 3.1**
 Class 2 **F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1**
 Class 3.1 **F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.2, 3.4.1**
 Class 4 **F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1**
 Class 5 **F3/VM1 2.0.1, 2.0.2, 3.1, 3.4.1**
 control of adverse effects of ignition **F3/VM1 3.1**
 control of ignition **F3/VM1 3.1**
 isolation distances **F3/VM1 3.2**
 methods of construction **F3/VM1 3.2**
 other legislation **F3/VM1 1.0**
 scope **F3/VM1 2.0**
 secondary containment systems **F3/VM1 3.3**
 security **F3/VM1 3.4**
 explosions **NZBC/F3.3 (c)**
 food preparation and utensil washing areas **NZBC/G3.3.2 (b)**

	hazardous substances associated	
	with building services	NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
	protected ignition sources	NZBC/F3.3 (d)
	release of pressure.....	NZBC/F3.3 (c)
	released during fire	NZBC/C3.2 (d), C3.3.10
	rendering hazardous materials harmless.....	NZBC/F3.3 (e)
	sewers and public drains	NZBC/F3.3 (b)
	signs	NZBC/F3.3 (g)
	surface finishes.....	NZBC/F3.3 (f)
	unauthorised access	NZBC/F3.3 (a)
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Hazardous wastes.....	G14/VM1 1.4.1 b), 1.9.1, 2.1.4, 2.2.1 b), 2.2.4, 2.3.6, 2.4.4, 3.3
	Health camps	
	<i>see</i> Communal residential	
	Hearths.....	B1/AS3 1.4, 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3, C/AS1 9.5, Figure 9.3
	hearth slabs.....	B1/AS3 2.2, 2.2.1 to 2.2.3
	Heat detectors	
	<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions	
	Heat transfer solid fuel appliances	
	limiting heat transfer	C/VM1 1.1
	Heating	
	<i>see</i> Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment	
	Height	
	<i>see</i> Building height or Escape height	
	Height clearances	D1/AS1 1.4, 1.4.1, Figure 3, Table 1
	Hobs.....	G3/AS1 1.2.1
	Hospitals	NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv); G1/AS1 Table 4
	<i>see also</i> Communal residential	
	Hostels	
	<i>see</i> Communal residential	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Hot dip galvanising.....	B1/AS3 1.8.6
	Hot plates.....	G3/AS1 1.2.1
	Hot water supply	
	<i>see</i> Water supplies, hot	
	Hotels.....	D1/AS1 9.1.1
	<i>see also</i> Communal residential	
	Household units	C/AS1 1.3.5, 1.3.6 b) c) e), 2.2.9 a), 3.11.6, 3.15.5, 3.15.8, 3.20.1, 6.1.1, 6.8.1, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.5.7, 7.9.19, 7.10.6, 7.10.7, A2.1.1 Type 5, Table 6.2; F7/AS1 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.2; G6/AS1 1.0.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	Housing.....	NZBC/A1 2.0, D1.3.3, E1.3.2, G1.3.5, G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G3.3.2 (c), G7.2, G12.3.4, G12.3.9, H1.3.2; F4/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1; G9/AS1 1.0; H1/VM1 1.0, 1.2, H1/AS1 1.0, 2.0
	detached dwellings	NZBC/A1 2.0.2, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F7.3, F8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1 1.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	group dwellings.....	NZBC/A1 2.0.4, G8.2; H1/VM1 1.1.2
	multi-unit dwellings.....	NZBC/A1 2.0.3, C3.3.2, D1.3.2 (i), F6.2, F8.2, G8.2, G15.2; H1/VM1 1.1, 1.2, H1/AS1 2.1.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	HVAC systems.....	F7/AS1 1.5.3

I

- Identification of non-potable water supply **G12/AS1** 4.2.1
see also **Water supplies**
- Illuminance **G7/VM1** 1.0; **G8/VM1** 1.0, **G8/AS1** 1.0
 measurement **G8/VM1** 1.0.1
 minimum **G8/AS1** 1.0.3
- Impact insulation class (IIC)..... **G6/VM1** 2.0
- In-service history **B2/VM1** 1.1
- Industrial buildings **NZBC/A1** 6.0, **D1.3.2 (h)**, **D1.3.3**, **E3.3.1**, **G1.3.5**, **G3.2.1**,
G3.3.1 (a) (b), **G3.3.2 (b)**, **G3.3.6**, **G8.2**, **G9.3.4**, **G12.3.9**,
H1.2 (a); **G1/AS1** Table 1; **G3/AS1** 2.0.1; **H1/AS1** 1.0.2
- Industrial Liquid Waste** **G14**
- Amend 11 | capacity **NZBC/G14.3.2 (a)**
 Sep 2010 | collection **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, 1.4
 | location of facilities..... **G14/VM1** 1.4
 contamination of potable water **NZBC/G14.3.2 (c)**
 conveyance systems..... **G14/VM1** 2.0
 Amend 11 | drainage **G14/VM1** 2.2
 Sep 2010 | piping systems **G14/VM1** 2.3, Table 3
 | pumps..... **G14/VM1** 2.4, Figure 2
 Amend 11 | corrosion..... **G14/VM1** 1.5.1, 1.5.2
 Sep 2010 | disposal **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, Table 1, Figure 1
 | location of facilities..... **G14/VM1** 1.4
 Amend 11 | to a natural waterway..... **G14/VM1** 1.2.1 b)
 Sep 2010 | to a sewer..... **G14/VM1** 1.2.1 a), **G14/AS1** 1.2.1, 1.2.2
 disposal systems..... **NZBC/G14.3.1**
 hazardous wastes
 | *see* Hazardous wastes
 Amend 11 | industry types **G14/VM1** 1.2.2, Table 1
 Sep 2010 | materials used in construction..... **G14/VM1** 1.5.1
 odours **NZBC/G14.3.1 (c)**, **G14.3.2 (f)**
 resource consents..... **NZBC/G14.3.2 (d)**
 safety facilities **G14/VM1** 3.3.2
 Amend 11 | security..... **G14/VM1** 1.9
 Sep 2010 | separation of waste..... **G14/VM1** 1.7.1
 storage **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, 1.2.1 c), 1.4
 | containers **NZBC/G14.3.1**
 | location of facilities..... **G14/VM1** 1.4
 | tanks
 | *see* Tanks
 Amend 11 | treatment..... **G14/VM1** 1.1.1, 1.2, 1.2.2, 1.4, Figure 1, Table 1
 Sep 2010 | location of facilities..... **G14/VM1** 1.4
- Amend 11 | unauthorised access **NZBC/G14.3.2 (g)**
 Sep 2010 | vehicle access **NZBC/G14.3.2 (b)**
- Inspection chambers
 | *see* Maintenance access to drains
- Inspection points
 | *see* Maintenance access to drains
- Insulation
 | *see* Fire resistance ratings
- Integrity
 | *see* Fire resistance ratings
- Intellectually handicapped persons
 | *see* People with disabilities

- Intended Life
see **Durability**
- Intended use **NZBC/B1.3.1, B1.3.2, D1.3.5 (a), E3.3.5, F1.3.2 (a), F3.3 (f), F4.3.2, G2.3.1, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a), G3.3.6, G5.2.1 (b), G9.2, G11.1 (c), G11.2, G12.3.5, G15.2**
- Interface with ancillary control systems..... **F7/AS1 1.5**
- Interior Environment** **G5**
 accessible reception areas..... **NZBC/G5.3.4**
 adequate activity space **NZBC/G5.1 (b), G5.2.1 (b)**
 see also Activity space
 enhanced listening systems **NZBC/G5.3.5, G5.3.6**
 internal temperature..... **NZBC/G5.1 (a), G5.2.1 (a), G5.3.1; G5/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2**
 unsafe installations..... **NZBC/G5.1 (c), G5.2.2, G5.3.2**
- Interior lighting
see **Artificial Light** **G8**
- Interior linings **G3/AS1 1.6, 2.2**
 ceilings **G3/AS1 2.1.2, 2.2.3**
 floors **G3/AS1 2.2.3, 2.2.4, 2.3.3 to 2.3.6**
 walls **G3/AS1 1.6, 2.1.1, 2.1.2, 2.2.3, 2.2.4**
- Interior surfaces..... **G7/AS1 1.0.2 to 1.0.4, Table 1**
- Intermediate floors
see Floors
- Internal Moisture** **E3**
 concealed spaces..... **NZBC/E3.3.6; E3/AS1 3.2.2**
 condensation..... **E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.1.5, 1.3**
 condensation channels **E3/AS1 1.3**
 energy efficiency..... **E3/AS1 1.1.5**
 floor surfaces **NZBC/E3.3.3, E3.3.5**
 free water overflow..... **NZBC/E3.2 (b), E3.3.2**
 fungal growth..... **NZBC/E3.2 (a); E3/AS1 1.0.1**
 overflow **E3/AS1 2.0**
 containment..... **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1, Figure 1**
 floor waste..... **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2**
 people with disabilities **E3/AS1 3.3.2**
 steel framing **E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)**
 thermal break **E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)**
 thermal resistance..... **NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.1**
 materials and installation..... **E3/AS1 1.1.3**
 ventilation **NZBC/E3.3.1; E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2**
 wall surfaces **NZBC/E3.3.4, E3.3.5**
 watersplash **E3/AS1 3.0**
 basins..... **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 baths..... **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 joints in linings..... **E3/AS1 3.2, Figure 2**
 lining materials **E3/AS1 3.1, Figure 1**
 showers..... **E3/AS1 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5**
 sinks..... **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 tubs..... **E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3**
 urinals **E3/AS1 3.3.6**
 windows..... **E3/AS1 1.3.1**

JKL

Isolating valves..... **G12/AS1** 3.7.1, 5.4.2

J

Jetties
see Ancillary buildings

K

Kerbs..... **D1/AS1** 1.5.4 a), Figure 6
see also Ramps

Kindergartens
see Early childhood centres and Communal non-residential

Kitchens
see **Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination**

Kitchen sinks..... **G13/AS1** 3.3.2, Figure 2, Table 2

L

Laboratory testing..... **B2/VM1** 1.2

Ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.0

see also Stairs and ladders

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, 5.1.7

individual rung-type ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 c), 5.4, Figure 24

clearance..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 c)

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 c)

rungs..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 a)

tread width..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 b)

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.4.1 b)

landings..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.2

length..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.5, 5.1.7

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.4

location..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.3

rung spacing..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.6

rung-type ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 b), 5.3, Figure 20

clearances..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 e)

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 d)

landings..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.2, Figure 23

rungs..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 b)

slope..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 a)

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.3.1 c)

safety enclosures..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.2, Figures 21 and 22

step-type ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1 a), 5.2, 5.2.1, Figure 19

clearances..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 e)

height..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 d)

horizontal openings..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 f)

slope..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 a)

treads..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 b)

width..... **D1/AS1** 5.2.1 c)

types of ladders..... **D1/AS1** 5.1.1

Landings..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (l) (m), D1.3.4 (i)**

Landslip..... **B1/VM4** A1.2.1 a)

Mechanical ventilation see Ventilation	
Medical consultancy rooms.....	NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv) see also Communal non-residential
Membrane cappings	E2/AS1 6.5
Amend 12 Oct 2011 Metal cappings	E2/AS1 6.4, 7.4.4, 9.9.10.2, Figure 9
Membrane roofs and decks	E2/AS1 8.5
butyl and EPDM.....	E2/AS1 8.5.4
control joints.....	E2/AS1 8.5.7
general.....	E2/AS1 8.5.2
gutters.....	E2/AS1 8.5.10, Figure 64
installation.....	E2/AS1 8.5.5
butyl and EPDM.....	E2/AS1 8.5.5.2
plywood.....	E2/AS1 8.5.5.1
Amend 12 Oct 2011 junctions.....	E2/AS1 8.5.8, Figures 57, 58 and 61-62
with walls.....	E2/AS1 8.5.8.1, Figure 62
limitations.....	E2/AS1 8.5.1, Figure 17A
penetrations.....	E2/AS1 8.5.9, Figures 59 and 60
handrails.....	E2/AS1 8.5.9.1
Amend 12 Oct 2011 plywood substrates.....	E2/AS1 8.5.3
roof and deck drainage.....	E2/AS1 8.5.6, Figures 56-64
Mixing devices see Water supply, hot	
Moisture see External Moisture, Internal Moisture, Surface Water	
Motels.....	D1/AS1 9.1.1 see also Communal residential
Municipal offices.....	NZBC/D1.3.4 (c) (iv) see also Commercial buildings
Museums see Communal non-residential	

N

Natural Light	G7
awareness of the outside environment	NZBC/G7.1, G7.2, G7.3.2
minimum illuminance	NZBC/G7.3.1
Natural ventilation	
see Ventilation	
Amend 11 Sep 2010 Network utility operators	NZBC/G11.3.6, G13.3.3, G15.3.3, H1.1; F1/VM1 2.1.1 f) G14/VM1 1.2.1 a), G14/AS1 1.2.1, 1.2.2
No-sky line condition	G7/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 3
Non-potable water supply	
see Water supply	
Non-return valves.....	G12/AS1 Figures 7 to 10, Table 6
Notional boundary.....	C/AS1 7.3.13 to 7.3.15, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.7.1, Table 7.4
Nurses' or Nursing homes	
see Communal residential	

O

- Obstructions **NZBC/D1.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 1.5**
 dangerous projections..... **D1/AS1 1.5.4**, Figure 6
 isolated columns **D1/AS1 1.5.5**, Figure 7
 major projections..... **D1/AS1 1.5.3**, Figure 5
 minor projections **D1/AS1 1.5.1, 1.5.2**, Figure 4
- Occupants **NZBC/D2.3.5 (b), G1.3.3 (e)**
 Amend 11 occupant densities **C/AS1 2.3.3, 3.4.5 b)**, Table 2.2
 Sep 2010 occupant load **F7/AS1 1.1.2 a)**, 2.1.1, **F6/AS1 Appendix A**
 occupant loads – specific requirements
 and limitations **C/AS1 2.3, 3.3.2, 3.4.5, 3.4.8 c)**, 3.6.1 a) d), 3.9.11,
 3.9.12 b) e), 3.10.1, 3.10.2, 3.12.2 b), 3.15.1 d),
 3.16.3 c), 3.17.9 a) Step 1 and Step 2, 4.5.15,
 6.3.1, 6.3.2, 6.4.1, 6.20.6 a), 6.20.7 a), 6.20.19,
 6.21.5 c), 6.22.2 c) d) f), B4.1.1, Tables 3.1 and 4.1
- Occupied spaces **C/AS1 3.2.1, 3.3.2 d)**, 6.6.7, 6.7.4, 6.22.3, Tables 2.1 and 6.2;
G4/AS1 1.1.1, 1.2.1 a); G6/AS1 1.0.1 a)
- Odours
 see **Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste**
- Offices
 see Commercial buildings
- Oil fired appliances
 installation **C/AS1 9.3**
 seismic restraint **C/AS1 9.3.2**
- Old people's homes..... **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d), G5.2.1 (a) (b),**
G5.3.1 to G5.3.3, G5.3.5, G7.2, G12.3.4;
G1/AS1 Table 4; G2/AS1 Table 1; G3/AS1 1.0.1;
G5/AS1 1.0.3, 2.0, Table 3
 see also Communal residential buildings
- Amend 11 On-site disposal **G13/VM4 1.0**
 Sep 2010 scope **G13/VM4 1.1**
- Open fires **C/AS1 9.5**, Figures 9.1 and 9.3
- Open paths..... **F8/AS1 3.1.1 a)**
 see Escape routes
- Opening windows..... **F4/AS1 2.0**
- Other property **C/AS1 4.3.2, 5.3.2 d)**, 6.1.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 b), 7.3.15 a), 7.7.1,
 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.6 b), 7.9.10 d), Tables 6.1 and 7.3
- Outbuildings..... **NZBC/A1 7.0. D1.2.1, D1.3.2, D1.3.3 (h) (i),**
 Amend 11 G1.3.4, G8.2, G12.3.8; **G1/AS1 Table 4**
 Sep 2010
- Ovens
 see **Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination**, cooking
- Overflow **E3/AS1 2.0**
 containment **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.1**, Figure 1
 floor waste **E3/AS1 2.0.1, 2.2**

P

- Amend 12 | Parapets **E2/AS1** 6.0, 9.3.9, 9.4.8, 9.5.5, 9.6.9.8, 9.7.7, 9.8.7, 9.9.10
 Oct 2011 | **C/AS1** 6.12.7 b), 7.1.2 e), 7.8.1 b), 7.8.2, 7.9.2 b), Figure 7.1
- Amend 12 | capping materials **E2/AS1** 6.3
 Oct 2011 | general **E2/AS1** 6.2, Figure 9
 limitations **E2/AS1** 6.1
 integral surface cappings **E2/AS1** 6.6
 membrane cappings **E2/AS1** 6.5
- Amend 12 | metal cappings **E2/AS1** 6.4, Figures 9 and 10
 Oct 2011 | parapet-to-wall junctions **E2/AS1** 6.4.1, Figures 11 and 12
- Pedestrians
 see **Access Routes**
- Penetrations **C/AS1** 3.12.3 e), 6.12.4, 6.12.9 d), 6.16.4 e), 6.17.1, 6.17.4,
 6.17.5, 6.17.7, 6.18.6 c), 6.18.9, 6.20.13 a)
- People with disabilities **NZBC/F8.3.4**; **C/AS1** 2.4, 3.15.1 e), 3.17.1 e); **D1/AS1** 1.1.4,
 Table 9; **E3/AS1** 3.3.2; **F7/AS1** 2.1.2 d) f); **F8/AS1** 5.0;
G1/AS1 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2, Figures 5 to 9,
 Tables 1 and 2; **G2/AS1** 1.2.2, Figure 2; **G3/AS1** 1.5.2;
G5/AS1 3.0; **G9/AS1** 2.0; **G12/AS1** 8.0
- accessible route identification **F8/AS1** 5.0.1 a) b)
 accessible routes **G1/AS1** 4.1.1
 electrical installations **NZBC/G9.3.4**
 enhanced listening systems **NZBC/G5.3.5**, **G5.3.6**
 facility identification **F8/AS1** 5.0.1 b)
 food preparation and cooking facilities **NZBC/G3.3.5**
 information and warning signs **NZBC/F8.2 (d)**, **F8.3.4**
 listening system identification **F8/AS1** 5.0.3, Figure 7
 mechanical installations for access
 see **Mechanical Installations for Access**
- personal hygiene facilities **NZBC/G1.3.5**
 provision of laundering facilities **NZBC/G2.3.4**
 usable water taps **G12/AS1** Figure 18
 water supply **NZBC/G12.3.9**
- Pergolas
 see Decks and Pergolas
- Personal Hygiene** **G1**; **NZBC/G13.1 (a)**
 see also Sanitary fixtures
- absence of facilities **NZBC/G1.1 (b)**
 access to facilities **NZBC/D1.3.3 (c)**, **G1.3.5**
 location of facilities **NZBC/G1.3.4**
 non-water-borne disposal system **NZBC/G1.3.2 (h)**
 overflows from sanitary fixtures **NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4**
 people with disabilities **NZBC/G1.3.5**; **G1/AS1** 1.1.2, 1.2.2, 4.0, 4.1, 4.2
 privacy **G1/AS1** 6.0
- cubicles **G1/AS1** 6.2, Figure 11
 line of sight **G1/AS1** 6.1, Figure 10
 lobbies **G1/AS1** 6.3
 unisex facilities **G1/AS1** 1.1.5
 privies **G1/AS1** 5.0.2
 water-borne disposal system **NZBC/G1.3.2 (g)**, **G13.1 (b)**
- Piles
 see Foundations

Piped Services	G10
extreme temperatures	NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
gas pipes	NZBC/G10.3.2, G10.3
hazardous substances.....	NZBC/G10.1, G10.2
identification of piping systems.....	NZBC/G10.3.4
isolating devices.....	NZBC/G10.3.6
piping systems	NZBC/G10.3.1
preventing sound transmission.....	G6/AS1 1.0.1 c)
protection against corrosion	NZBC/G10.3.3
Pipes	
<i>see also</i> Discharge pipes, Discharge stacks, Vent pipes	
installation	G11/AS1 4.0
jointing methods	G13/AS1 6.1.1
materials.....	G13/AS1 2.1.1, Table 1
sizing.....	G11/AS1 1.0
pressure ranges.....	G11/AS1 1.1
flow velocities	G11/AS1 1.4
pressures above 1.5 kPa	G11/AS1 1.3
pressures below 1.5 kPa	G11/AS1 1.2
supports	G13/AS1 6.2.1, Table 7
thermal movement.....	G13/AS1 6.3
watertightness	G13/AS1 7.0
Placement of detectors	F7/AS1 1.4
Places of assembly	D1/AS1 8.0
<i>see also</i> Communal non-residential	
Plumbing systems	
<i>see</i> Foul Water	
Plywood sheet	E2/AS1 9.8
corners	E2/AS1 9.8.4
external.....	E2/AS1 9.8.4.1, Figure 122
Internal.....	E2/AS1 9.8.4.2, Figure 123
finishes	E2/AS1 9.8.9
flashing material	E2/AS1 9.8.5, Tables 20-22
installation	E2/AS1 9.8.3, Table 23
fixings	E2/AS1 9.8.3.1, Table 24
joints	E2/AS1 9.8.3.2, Figures 119 and 121
limitations.....	E2/AS1 9.8.1
materials.....	E2/AS1 9.8.2, Figure 119
parapets and enclosed balustrades	E2/AS1 9.8.7
soffit details.....	E2/AS1 9.8.6, Figure 8A
windows and doors.....	E2/AS1 9.8.8
direct fixed.....	E2/AS1 9.8.8.1, Figure 115
with cavity	E2/AS1 9.8.8.2, Figure 116
Pools	
<i>see</i> Swimming pools	
Potable water supply	
<i>see</i> Water Supplies	

Amend 12
Oct 2011 |

Amend 12
Oct 2011 |

Amend 12
Oct 2011 |

Amend 12
Oct 2011 |

Amend 11
Sep 2010 |

	Pressed metal tiles	E2/AS1 8.3
	barges.....	E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
	fascias	E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
Amend 12 Oct 2011	fixings	E2/AS1 8.3.7, Figure 33
	flashings	E2/AS1 8.3.8, Table 7, Figures 34-37
	gutters	E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
Amend 12 Oct 2011	installation	E2/AS1 8.3.2
	limitations	E2/AS1 8.3.1
	metal substrate	E2/AS1 8.3.4
	aluminium	E2/AS1 8.3.4.3
	choice of metal	E2/AS1 8.3.4.1
	steel	E2/AS1 8.3.4.2, Table 20
Amend 12 Oct 2011	ridges.....	E2/AS1 8.3.9, Figures 34-37
	roof penetrations.....	E2/AS1 8.3.10, Figure 29
Amend 12 Oct 2011	roof pitch	E2/AS1 8.3.5, Figure 32
	tiles and accessories.....	E2/AS1 8.3.3
	underlay	E2/AS1 8.3.6, Table 23
	Pressure limiting valves	G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 c), Figure 8, Table 6
	Pressure reducing valves	G12/AS1 5.3.2, 6.2.1 b), Figures 7 and 9, Table 6
	Pressure regulators	G11/AS1 2.1
	Pressure relief valves	G12/AS1 6.4.1, 6.6, Table 6
	installation	G12/AS1 6.6.5
	relief valve drains	G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13
	Pressurisation of safe paths	<i>see</i> Fire safety precautions
	Principal entrance	D1/AS1 1.1
	Prisons	<i>see</i> Communal residential
	Privacy	<i>see</i> Personal Hygiene
	Privies	<i>see</i> Personal Hygiene , privies
	Profiled metal roof claddings	E2/AS1 8.4
Amend 12 Oct 2011	allowance for expansion	E2/AS1 8.4.10, Table 16, Figure 39
	fixings: corrugated and trapezoidal profiles.....	E2/AS1 8.4.8, Figure 39, Tables 11, 12, 14, 15
	requirements	E2/AS1 8.4.8.1
	fixings: trough profile	E2/AS1 8.4.9, Figure 40, Tables 13, 20, 21
	flashing details	E2/AS1 8.4.12, Figures 43-48
	flashing requirements	E2/AS1 8.4.11, Tables 21 and 22, Figures 41 and 42
	fixing flashings.....	E2/AS1 8.4.11.1, Table 21, Figure 6
Amend 12 Oct 2011	general.....	E2/AS1 8.4.2
	hidden gutters	E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
	internal gutters	E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.3, Figure 52
	limitations	E2/AS1 8.4.1
	materials	E2/AS1 8.4.3
Amend 12 Oct 2011	aluminium	E2/AS1 8.4.3.3
	choice of metal.....	E2/AS1 8.4.3.1, Table 20
	steel	E2/AS1 8.4.3.2, Table 20
	parallel hidden gutters.....	E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.1, Figure 50
	profile closure	E2/AS1 8.4.15
	profiles.....	E2/AS1 8.4.4, Figure 38
	roof penetrations.....	E2/AS1 8.4.17, Table 17, Figures 21 and 53-55
	roof pitch	E2/AS1 8.4.5
Amend 12 Oct 2011	stopends.....	E2/AS1 8.4.13, Figure 49
	structure	E2/AS1 8.4.6, Tables 11-15
	turn-downs at gutters	E2/AS1 8.4.14
	underlay	E2/AS1 8.4.7, Table 23
	valley gutters	E2/AS1 8.4.16, 8.4.16.2, Table 8, Figure 51

Amend 12 Oct 2011	Profiled metal wall claddings E2/AS1 9.6
	(horizontal and vertical)
	fixings E2/AS1 9.6.6, Table 20, Figure 39
	flashings E2/AS1 9.6.7, Figures 5 and 6, Table 21
	general E2/AS1 9.6.2
	horizontal profiled metal on cavity E2/AS1 9.6.9
	barges E2/AS1 9.6.9.4, Figure 97
	bottom of cladding E2/AS1 9.6.9.5, Figure 98
	cavity battens E2/AS1 9.6.9.2, Table 23
	corners E2/AS1 9.6.9.3, Figure 96
	installation E2/AS1 9.6.9.1, Table 23
	parapets and balustrades E2/AS1 9.6.9.8, Figures 101 and 102
	penetrations E2/AS1 9.6.9.6, Figures 53 and 69
	windows and doors E2/AS1 9.6.9.7, Figures 99 and 100
Amend 12 Oct 2011	limitations E2/AS1 9.6.1, Figure 38, Table 3
	maintenance E2/AS1 9.6.4
	materials E2/AS1 9.6.3
	aluminium E2/AS1 9.6.3.3
	choice of metal E2/AS1 9.6.3.1, Table 20
Amend 12 Oct 2011	steel E2/AS1 9.6.3.2, Table 20
	profiles E2/AS1 9.6.5, Figure 38
	vertical profile – direct fixed E2/AS1 9.6.8
	barges E2/AS1 9.6.8.2, Figure 92
	bottom of cladding E2/AS1 9.6.8.3, Figure 93
Amend 12 Oct 2011	corners E2/AS1 9.6.8.4, Figures 93 and 94
	installation E2/AS1 9.6.8.1, Table 23
	penetrations E2/AS1 9.6.8.5, Figures 53 and 69
Amend 12 Oct 2011	windows and doors E2/AS1 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
	Protected paths
	see Escape routes
	Protected shafts C/AS1 6.10.4 a), 6.12.4, 6.16, Figure 6.8
	Protecting other property
	see Spread of Fire, Internal Moisture, Water Supplies
	Protection of gas supply G11/AS1 7.0
	contamination G11/AS1 7.1
	low pressures G11/AS1 7.2
	Protection of water supplies G12/AS1 3.4
	air gaps G12/AS1 3.5
	backflow prevention devices G12/AS1 3.6
	atmospheric vacuum breakers G12/AS1 3.6.2 d) 3.6.4 d), 3.7.1, Table 2
	double check valves G12/AS1 3.6.2 b), 3.7.2, Table 2
	pressure vacuum breakers G12/AS1 3.6.2 c), 3.6.4 c), 3.7.1, Table 2
	reduced pressure zone devices G12/AS1 3.6.2 a), 3.6.4 a), 3.7.2, Table 2
	cross connections G12/AS1 3.1, 3.2
	hazard G12/AS1 3.3
	installation G12/AS1 3.6.3, 3.6.4, 3.7.1
	testing G12/AS1 3.7
	Purpose groups C/AS1 1.3.2 Step 3, 2.1.3, 2.2.1, 2.3.2, 3.4.2 b), 4.2.7 a) c), 4.5.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.8, 4.5.13, 5.8.4, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.6, 7.11.3, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 4.1, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5
Amend 11 Sep 2010	active purpose groups C/AS1 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.4.1 Step 2, Table 4.1
	concessions for multiple purpose groups C/AS1 5.6.7, 5.6.8, 5.6.11
	fire hazard category 4 C/AS1 2.2.10, 5.6.11
	primary purpose group C/AS1 2.2.2, 2.2.4, 2.2.7, 4.2.7 c), 4.4.1 Step 1, 4.5.5, 6.10.1, 6.11.1, 6.11.2
	residential community care C/AS1 2.4
	sleeping purpose groups C/AS1 3.9.12 f), 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5, 4.4.1 Step 2, 4.5.11, 5.3.2 a), 5.7.9, 6.1.2 b), 7.7.1, 7.8.10 a), 7.9.1, 7.9.16, 7.10.5 c), A1.2.1 Type 16, Tables 4.1 and 7.4

Purpose groups (continued)

- CL **C/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.16.1, 3.16.3, 3.16.7, 3.17.1 c), 3.17.9 a), 6.3, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.18 d), 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 b)
- CM **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.17.1 c), 6.4, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.9.10 b), Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 b)
- CO **C/AS1** 3.9.3 b), 3.15.1 b), 3.16.5 to 3.16.7, 4.3.3, 6.5, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- CS **C/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.6, 2.2.7, 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.3.1, 6.20.7, 6.20.17, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 b)
- IA **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.10.2, 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 4.3.3, 6.10, 6.22.1, A2.1.1 Type 16, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3
- ID **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 b), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 4.3.3, 6.11, A2.1.1 Type 16, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3 and 6.3
- IE **C/AS1** 4.3.3, 6.9, 6.20.20, 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), Tables 2.1 and 6.2
- SA **C/AS1** 2.2.3, 2.2.9, 2.3.6, 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.7, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 d)
- SC **C/AS1** 2.3.6, 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.16.8, 3.17.4, 3.17.9 b) d), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.6, 6.9.6, 6.11.3, 6.20.8 b), 6.20.20, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), 7.11.1, 8.1.2, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 e), 2.2.3
- SD **C/AS1** 2.3.6, 3.9.12 f), 3.9.14, 3.11.6, 3.16.8, 3.17.4, 3.17.9 b) d), 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.6, 6.9.6, 6.11.3, 6.20.8 b), 6.20.20, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 a), 7.11.1, 8.1.2, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.3.5 a) b), 2.1.2 e), 2.2.3
- SH **C/AS1** 1.3.3, 1.3.4, 2.2.8, 2.2.9 b), 3.5.2 b) to 3.5.4 b), 3.15.1, 3.20.1, 4.3.3, 5.9.4 c), 6.8, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.20.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.19, 7.10.6, 7.10.8, 7.11.4, Figure 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- SR **C/AS1** 1.3.5, 2.2.9 a), 3.5.2 b), 3.5.3 b), 3.5.4 b), 3.11.6, 3.15.1 c), 3.15.5 to 3.15.7, 3.16.9, 3.17.9 b) d), 3.18.1, 3.20.1, 4.5.11, 5.7.6 b), 5.8.2 c), 6.8, 6.9.6, 6.14.3, 6.14.4, 6.16.5, 6.18.7, 6.20.1, 6.20.20, 6.22.1, 7.1.1 b), 7.3.1 a), 7.3.14, 7.5.3 Step 1, 7.5.7, 7.5.9, 7.5.10, 7.8.5, 7.9.6 a), 7.9.10 c), 7.9.19, 7.10.6 to 7.10.8, A2.1.1 Type 4, Type 5, Type 7, Figures 3.21 and 7.7, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.1 to 6.3 and 7.5; **F7/AS1** 1.1.2 b), 1.2.5, 1.3.5 a) b)
- WF **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.15.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- WH **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 5.8.4, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- WL **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a), 3.5.3 a), 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 3.18.1, 6.22.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3
- WM **C/AS1** 3.5.2 a) to 3.5.4 a), 3.5.6 c), 3.15.1 b), 3.15.3, 3.15.4, 6.11.1, Figure 3.20, Tables 2.1, 3.1 to 3.3, 6.2 and 6.3

Q R

Q

Amend 12
Oct 2011

R

Radioactive substances

see **Hazardous Substances and Processes**, Class 7

Ramps **C/AS1** 3.1.4, 3.9.2, **D1/AS1** 1.3.1, 1.3.2, 3.0
 accessible ramps..... **D1/AS1** 3.1.3, 6.0.3 to 6.0.4, Figure 9
 slopes **D1/AS1** Table 3
 width..... **D1/AS1** 3.2
 intermediate landings..... **D1/AS1** 3.3.1, Table 5
 length..... **D1/AS1** 3.3.3
 width..... **D1/AS1** 3.3.2
 kerb ramps..... **D1/AS1** 3.4, Figure 10
 landings **D1/AS1** 3.3, Figure 25
 service ramps..... **D1/AS1** 3.1.2, Figure 8, Table 4
 slip resistance **D1/AS1** 3.1.4, Table 2
 slopes **D1/AS1** 3.1, 3.1.1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

Reflectances **G7/AS1** Table 2
 high..... **G7/AS1** 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1
 medium **G7/AS1** 1.0.3, 1.0.4, Table 1

Refuge areas

see Fire safety precautions

Refuse

see **Solid waste**Amend 12
Oct 2011

Reinforcing steel **B1/AS1** 2.1, 3.1, **B1/AS3** 1.3.2 b) c), 1.4,
 1.6, 1.6.1, 1.6.2, 1.8.5, 2.2.1 a), Table 1

Relevant boundaries **C/AS1** 2.2.8, 5.3.2 a), 5.4.1 g), 5.7.6 a), 5.9.4 c), 7.1.2 d),
 7.3.1 b), 7.3.4 to 7.3.6, 7.3.9, 7.3.12 b), 7.3.15 a),
 7.4.2, 7.5 to 7.8, 7.10.5, 7.10.6, 7.11.4, Figures 7.3,
 7.7 to 7.9, Tables 7.1 to 7.5

Relief valve drains

see Cold water expansion valves, Temperature relief valves,
 Temperature/pressure relief valves

Retaining walls **F4/AS1** 1.2.5

Retirement villages

see Communal residential

Rodding points

see Maintenance access to drains

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Roof claddings **E2/AS1** 8.0
 general..... **E2/AS1** 8.1
 fixings **E2/AS1** 8.1.4, Tables 20-22
 gutters **E2/AS1** 8.1.6, Figure 20
 hidden gutters **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.2, Figures 27, 37, 50, 51
 internal gutters **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.1, Figures 52 and 63
 valley gutters **E2/AS1** 8.1.6.2, Table 8, Figures 27, 37, 50 and 51
 limitations **E2/AS1** 8.1.2
 maintenance **E2/AS1** 8.1.3
 projecting eaves **E2/AS1** 8.1.3.1

Amend 12
Oct 2011

<i>Roof claddings (continued)</i>	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	roof penetrations E2/AS1 8.1.7, Tables 9 and 17, Figures 21 and 22, 29-31
	underlays E2/AS1 8.1.5, Table 23, Figure 25(b)
Amend 12 Oct 2011	underlay support E2/AS1 8.1.5.1
	weathertightness E2/AS1 8.1.1
	Roof/wall junctions E2/AS1 5.0
	apron flashings E2/AS1 5.1, Table 7, Figures 7, 8B and 35
	barges E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
	fascias E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
Amend 12 Oct 2011	gutters E2/AS1 5.2, Figure 8B
	soffits E2/AS1 5.3, Figures 8A and 114
	Roofs C/AS1 3.14.3, 3.14.4, 3.14.6 a), 3.16.7, 5.1.1 b), 6.12.1, 6.12.7, 6.18.5 c), 6.20.5, 6.20.11, 7.2.1 b), 7.8.1, 7.9.1 to 7.9.9, Figures 7.1 and 7.11;
	car parking and storage C/AS1 7.8.2, 7.9.16, 7.9.17
	eaves and projections (fire safety) C/AS1 2.2.8, 7.8.3 to 7.8.5
	exterior surface finishes C/AS1 7.11.1
	fire spread C/AS1 7.1.1, 7.9.1, 7.9.2
	fire venting C/AS1 4.2.4, 5.4.1 i), 5.5.3, 6.3.2 b), 7.8.10 a)
	open sided buildings C/AS1 7.8.8, 7.8.9, 7.8.10, Figure 7.10
	roof spaces C/AS1 6.12.8, 6.18.5 b) c), 6.18.7, 6.18.8, 6.18.10
	Rubbish chutes see Solid Waste
	Run-off
	estimation of run-off E1/VM1 2.0
	Rational Method E1/VM1 2.0.1
	rainfall intensity E1/VM1 2.2, E1/AS1 Appendix A
	run-off coefficient E1/VM1 2.1, Table 1
	slope correction E1/VM1 2.1.3, Table 2
	time of concentration E1/VM1 2.2.1, 2.3
	alternative procedure E1/VM1 2.3.6, 2.3.7
	catchment slopes E1/VM1 2.3.7
	open channel flow E1/VM1 2.3.5
	pipe flow E1/VM1 2.3.4, Table 1
	time of entry E1/VM1 2.3.2
	overland flow E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 1
	road channel flow E1/VM1 2.3.2 b), Figure 2
	time of network flow E1/VM1 2.3.3

S

S rating

see Fire resistance ratings

Safe paths **F7/AS1** 1.3.1, 1.3.4; **F8/AS1** 3.2.3 b)
see also Escape routes

Safe place..... **NZBC/F7.3, F8.3.3 (a); C/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.7.1, 3.16.4, 3.16.8, 6.1.1, 6.22.7,
A2.1.1 Type 13 and Type 16

Safe trays

see Storage water heaters

Safe water temperatures

see **Water Supplies**, hot

Safety from Falling..... **F4**

see also Barriers

	accidental falls.....	NZBC/F4.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	children.....	NZBC/F4.3.4 (f), F4/AS1 1.2.1, Figures 1-4
	gates.....	NZBC/F4.3.5 (a)
	impact of people.....	NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)
	low risk areas.....	F4/AS1 1.2.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	pressure of people.....	NZBC/F4.3.4 (d)
	opening windows.....	F4/AS1 2.0
Amend 11 Sep 2010	provision of barriers.....	NZBC/F4.3.1
	retaining walls.....	F4/AS1 1.2.5
Amend 11 Sep 2010	roofs with permanent access.....	NZBC/F4.3.2
	seats on decks.....	F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figure 6
Amend 11 Sep 2010	swimming pools.....	NZBC/F4.3.3, F4.3.5
	fencing.....	F4/AS1 2.7

Safety of users

see **Hazardous Agents on Site, Hazardous Building Materials, Hazardous Substances and Processes, Safety from Falling, Construction and Demolition Hazards, Lighting for Emergency, Warning Systems, Signs**

Sanitary appliances..... **NZBC/G13.2; G12/AS1** 8.0.1, Table 1;
G13/AS1 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2
washing machines..... **G13/AS1** Figure 2, Table 2

Sanitary fixtures..... **NZBC/E3.3.2 to E3.3.4, G1.3.1, G1.3.2, G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b), G13.2; G12/AS1** 6.12.1, 6.14.2, Figure 20,
Tables 1 and 3; **G13/AS1** 1.0.2, 3.3.1, Table 2

see also Basins, Bidets, **Personal Hygiene**, Showers, Urinals, WC pans

	acceptable standards.....	G1/AS1 2.6
	access	
	pans.....	G1/AS1 4.2.7
	people with disabilities.....	G1/AS1 1.2.2, 4.1
	basins.....	G1/AS1 3.3, Figure 9, Table 1
	bidets.....	G1/AS1 2.4
	communal sanitary fixtures.....	G1/AS1 3.4
	construction and installation.....	G1/AS1 2.0
	locations.....	G1/AS1 3.0, 4.2.1
	non-flushing sanitary fixtures.....	G1/AS1 5.0
	privies.....	G1/AS1 5.0.2
	number of fixtures required.....	G1/AS1 1.0, Figure 1, Tables 1 to 4
	safe water temperatures.....	G12/AS1 6.14.1, 6.14.2
	sanitary towel disposal.....	G1/AS1 1.1.5 b), 1.2, 1.2.2
	showers.....	G1/AS1 2.5, 4.2.3, 4.2.4, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2
	soil fixtures.....	G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
	see also WC pans	
	space dimensions.....	G1/AS1 3.1, 4.2.2, 6.2.1, Figures 4 to 9
	toilets	
	see WC pans	
	types of fixtures required.....	G1/AS1 1.0, Tables 1 and 2

Sanitary fixtures (continued)

urinals	G1/AS1 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1
bowl urinals	G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
continuous wall urinals	G1/AS1 2.3.1, Figure 3
discharge system	G1/AS1 2.3.2
flushing systems	G1/AS1 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
manually operated	G1/AS1 2.3.8
stall urinals	G1/AS1 2.3.1, 2.3.5
surface finishes	G1/AS1 2.3.4
trough urinals	G1/AS1 2.3.1 to 2.3.3

Sanitation

see **Personal Hygiene**

Schools

see Communal non-residential

SDI

see Smoke developed index

Seating	C/AS1 2.3.5, 3.3.2 k), 3.3.6 c), 3.9.3, 3.9.4, 3.9.7 to 3.9.11, 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1, Figures 3.13 to 3.15, Tables 2.2 and 3.4
open air auditoriums (purpose group CO)	C/AS1 3.16.5, 3.16.6, 6.5.1

Seats on decks	F4/AS1 1.2.4, Figure 6
----------------------	-------------------------------

Security	NZBC/G14.3.2 (g); G14/VM1 1.9, G14/AS1 1.1
----------------	--

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Seismic resistance of engineering systems	B1/VM1 13.0
---	--------------------

Serviceability limit states

see **Structure**, limit states

Services and facilities

see **Personal Hygiene, Laundering, Food Preparation and Prevention of Contamination, Ventilation, Interior Environment, Airborne and Impact Sound, Natural Light, Artificial Light, Electricity, Piped Services, Gas as an Energy Source, Water Supply, Foul Water, Industrial Liquid Waste, Solid Waste**

Sewers

see **Foul Water**

SFI

see Spread of flame index

Sheds

see Outbuildings

Shops

see Commercial buildings

Showers	E3/AS1 3.2, 3.2.2, 3.3, Figures 4 and 5; G1/AS1 2.5, Figures 5 and 8, Table 2; G13/AS1 Table 2
---------------	---

Shrinkage

see **Structure**, loads

Signs	F8; NZBC/C2.3.3, D1.3.4 (a), D2.3.2 (d); C/AS1 3.3.6 a), 3.17.11 d), D1/AS1 1.1.1
-------------	---

escape routes	NZBC/F8.2 (a), F8.3.3 (a)
exit	F8/AS1 3.0
alternative exit	F8/AS1 3.2.3 b)
arrows	F8/AS1 3.2.2, 3.3.2, Figure 3
backgrounds	F8/AS1 3.3.3
colours	F8/AS1 2.1, 3.4, 3.5.3 a) b), 4.1.3, Table 3
illumination	F8/AS1 3.5
externally illuminated	F8/AS1 3.5.2
internally illuminated	F8/AS1 3.5.3
lighting supply	F8/AS1 3.5.5
self-luminous	F8/AS1 3.5.4
lettering	F8/AS1 3.3.1, Table 4
location	F8/AS1 3.1
no exit signs	F8/AS1 3.2.3 a)
wording	F8/AS1 3.2

Signs; escape routes (continued)

fire safety.....	F8/AS1 4.0, 6.4
call points	F8/AS1 4.1, Figure 4
colours.....	F8/AS1 4.1.3
fire and smoke control doors	F8/AS1 4.2
lifts.....	F8/AS1 6.4.1
stairs for Fire Service personnel.....	F8/AS1 6.4.3, Figures 12 and 13
storage heights.....	F8/AS1 6.4.2, Figure 11
hazard signs.....	F8/AS1 6.0
dangerous goods.....	F8/AS1 6.1
class 1.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 2.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 3.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 5.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4
class 7.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4
colour.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4 a
radiation warning symbol.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4 a), Figure 8
colour.....	F8/AS1 6.1.3
layout.....	F8/AS1 6.1.3
lettering.....	F8/AS1 6.1.3, 6.1.4
location.....	F8/AS1 6.1.4
electrical hazards.....	F8/AS1 6.2, Figure 9
escalators and moving walks.....	F8/AS1 6.6, Figure 15
floor loadings.....	F8/AS1 6.3
buildings.....	F8/AS1 6.3.1, Figure 10
lifts.....	F8/AS1 6.3.2
passenger lifts.....	F8/AS1 6.3.2 a)
service lifts.....	F8/AS1 6.3.2 b)
hazardous substances and processes.....	NZBC/F3.3 (g)
identification of hazards.....	NZBC/F8.2 (c) , F8.3.2
machine rooms.....	F8/AS1 6.5, Figure 14
non-potable water.....	F8/AS1 6.7, Figure 16
lighting for emergency.....	NZBC/F6.3.2, F8.3.3 (b)
people with disabilities.....	NZBC/F8.2 (d) , F8.3.4; F8/AS1 5.0
access symbol.....	F8/AS1 5.0.2 c), Figure 6
layout.....	F8/AS1 5.0.2, Figure 5
listening systems.....	F8/AS1 5.0.3, Figure 7
readability.....	NZBC/F8.3.1
lettering type and proportions.....	F8/AS1 1.0, Table 1
safety.....	F8/AS1 2.0, 3.2.1
caution.....	F8/AS1 2.2.2, 6.1.2, 6.2.2, Figure 2
colours.....	F8/AS1 2.1, Table 3
layout.....	F8/AS1 2.2
prohibition and stop signs.....	F8/AS1 2.2.1, 6.7.1, Figure 1
safe condition signs.....	F8/AS1 2.2.3
safety symbols.....	F8/AS1 2.3
visibility.....	NZBC/F8.3.1, F8.3.3 (b)
Single escape routes	
see Escape routes	
Sinks.....	E3/AS1 3.2.2, Figure 3; G3/AS1 1.1.5, G13/AS1 Table 2
see also Basins, Cleaners' sinks, Kitchen sinks	
Site characteristics.....	B1/VM4 Appendix A
Site investigation.....	B1/VM4 3.5.1, 4.7.1, Appendix A; F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.0, Figure 1
analysis.....	F1/VM1 2.4
assessment.....	F1/VM1 1.0.3, 2.5, Figure 2
detailed investigation.....	B1/VM4 A1.3; F1/VM1 1.0.2 c), 2.3
history and records.....	F1/VM1 2.1
preliminary investigation.....	B1/VM4 A1.2; F1/VM1 1.0.2 b), 2.2
previous industrial use of site.....	F1/VM1 2.1.1, Table 1
recording information.....	B1/VM4 A1.4
Site specific considerations.....	B2/VM1 1.2

- Siteworks
see Design, siteworks
- Slip resistance **D1/VM1** 1.0, **D1/AS1** 2.1, 3.1.4, 4.1.4 c), Table 2
- Slopes **D1/AS1** 1.2
 acceptable slopes **D1/AS1** 1.2.1, Figure 2
 changes in level **D1/AS1** 1.3, 1.3.1
 cross falls **D1/AS1** 1.2.2
- Slope stability **B1/VM4** 1.0.4
- Small chimneys
see Chimneys
- Smoke **NZBC/C3.3.1, C3.3.2, C3.3.4, C3.3.7, C3.3.8**
- Smoke alarms **F7/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.1.2
 alarm system **F7/AS1** 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.2.3, 3.2.4
 location **F7/AS1** 3.3.1, 3.3.2
 maintenance **F7/AS1** 3.4.1
- Smoke control **C/AS1** 3.11.9, 6.19.1, 6.19.12, 6.19.13, Table 6.1
see also Fire safety precautions
 car parking **C/AS1** 6.10.4 b), 6.10.6
 doors
 see Doors
 in air handling systems
 see Fire safety precautions
 intermediate floors **C/AS1** 3.4.6 a), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 4.5.18, 6.21.3, 6.21.4
 limited area atriums **C/AS1** 4.5.18, 6.21.4 b), 6.22.1,
 6.22.7, 6.22.8, Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
 long corridors **C/AS1** 6.13.1, Figure 6.5
 mechanical smoke extract
 see Fire safety precautions
 natural smoke venting
 see Fire safety precautions
 pressurisation
 see Fire safety precautions
 smoke reservoirs **C/AS1** 6.22.2 f), 6.22.5, 6.22.7 to 6.22.10,
 A2.1.1 Type 10 and Type 11,
 Figure 6.14, Table 6.4
 systems **C/AS1** 3.4.6 a), 3.4.8 d), 3.9.13 d), 4.5.17, 6.21.5, 6.23.3 a),
 A2.1.1 Type 9, Type 10 Type 11 Type 17, B1.1.1,
 B2.2.1 Step 2, B3.1.1
 ventilation **C/AS1** 3.14.7, 6.9.6 to 6.9.8, 6.10.6
 vertical safe paths **C/AS1** 6.9.11, Figure 6.1
- Smokecells **C/AS1** 3.4.6 b), 4.2.2, 6.1.2 a), 6.4.1, 6.9.1, 6.12.4
- Smoke detectors
see Fire safety precautions
- Smoke developed index (SDI) **C/AS1** 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d),
 C4.1.1 d), Table 6.2
- Smoke separations **C/AS1** 3.8.3 b), 3.11.1, 3.17.12 b), 6.1.2 c), 6.3.1, 6.6.4 b),
 6.6.6 b), 6.9.6 e), 6.9.11, 6.10.1, 6.12.3, 6.12.4, 6.12.9,
 6.13.1, 6.19.1, Table 6.1
 glazing **C/AS1** 5.8.9
 smoke seals **C/AS1** 6.12.9, 6.19.2 b), 6.19.4
- Smoke spread
see Smoke control
- Snow
see **Structure**, loads

Amend 11
 Sep 2010 |

Socket outlets	
<i>see</i> Electricity , people with disabilities	
Soil fixtures	G1/AS1 3.1.1, 3.2.1, 3.2.2, 3.3.1
<i>see also</i> WC pans	
Soil properties	B1/VM4 1.0.5, 2.0.6, 2.0.7, Appendix A
Soil shrinkage and expansion	B1/VM4 3.1.2, 3.4.3, A1.2.1
Soils	
adverse moisture conditions	B1/VM4 1.0.2
Solar water heaters	G12
installation	G12/AS2 5.0
pipe installation	G12/AS2 5.3
pipe insulation	G12/AS2 5.4
weathertightness	G12/AS2 5.2, Table 4, Figures 2–9
wetback water heaters	G12/AS2 5.1
location	G12/AS2 4.0, 4.1
solar orientation and inclination	G12/AS2 4.2, Figure 2
maintenance and durability	G12/AS2 7.0
durability	G12/AS2 7.2
maintenance	G12/AS2 7.1
materials	G12/AS2 2.0
material selection	G12/AS2 2.1, Tables 1, 2 and 3
requirements	G12/AS2 3.0
operating and safety devices	G12/AS2 3.4
protection from frosts	G12/AS2 3.6, Figure 1
protection from Legionella bacteria	G12/AS2 3.5
sizing of systems	G12/AS2 3.3
solar controller	G12/AS2 3.2
solar water heaters and components	G12/AS2 3.1.1
scope	G12/AS2 1.0
exclusions	G12/AS2 1.2
structural support limitations	G12/AS2 1.1
structural support	G12/AS2 6.0
collector support rails	G12/AS2 6.5, Figures 17 and 18
elevated solar collectors parallel to the roof	G12/AS2 6.4, Figures 14–16
general requirements	G12/AS2 6.2, Figures 10–13
mounting collectors at different pitch to roof cladding	G12/AS2 6.6, Figures 19 and 20
scope	G12/AS2 6.1
Solid fuel appliances	
domestic	B1/AS3 2.0
installation	C/AS1 9.1
seismic restraint	C/AS1 9.1.2
Solid plastering	B2/AS1 3.3
Solid Waste	G15
chutes	C/AS1 3.12.1, 6.16.5, 6.16.6
collection	NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1
holding	NZBC/G15.2, G15.3.1
sewer	NZBC/G15.3.3
storage	C/AS1 3.12.1, G15/AS1 1.0.1, 3.0, Figure 1
alternative solution	G15/AS1 3.1
capacity	G15/AS1 1.0.1
location	G15/AS1 2.0.1
floors	G15/AS1 3.0.2
walls	G15/AS1 3.0.3
water supply	G15/AS1 3.0.7
windows	G15/AS1 3.0.4, 3.0.6
space required	G15/AS1 1.0.2
vehicle access	G15/AS1 3.0.10
ventilation	G15/AS1 1.0.3, 3.0.8, 3.0.9
temperature	NZBC/G15.3.1 (d)
waste disposal units	NZBC/G15.3.3

Amend 11
Sep 2010

- waste (rubbish) chutes **NZBC/G15.3.2; G15/AS1** 4.0, Figure 2
 cleaning **G15/AS1** 4.0.3
 odours..... **NZBC/G15.3.2 (d)**
 restricted access..... **NZBC/G15.3.2 (g)**
 spread of fire **NZBC/G15.3.2 (e)**
- Sound insulation tests
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**
- Sound transmission class (STC)
see **Airborne and Impact Sound**
- Spandrels **C/AS1** 7.1.2 e), 7.9.12, 7.9.13, Figure 7.2
- Specified intended life
see **Durability**
- Spread of Fire
 automatic fire suppression systems..... **NZBC/C3.3.6**
see also Fire safety precautions
 automatic smoke control systems..... **NZBC/C3.3.8**
see also Smoke control
 concealed spaces..... **NZBC/C3.3.4**
 protect adjacent property..... **NZBC/C3.1 (c), C3.2 (c)**
 resistant to spread of fire **NZBC/C2.3.3, C3.3.1**
 rubbish chutes..... **NZBC/G15.3.2**
 safeguard the environment..... **NZBC/C3.1 (d), C3.2 (d)**
 safety while evacuating **NZBC/C3.1 (a)**
see also **Means of Escape**
- Amend 11 | Spread of flame index (SFI) **C/AS1** 6.18.2 d), 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.7 c) d),
 Sep 2010 | C4.1.1 b), Table 6.2
- Sprinklers
see Fire safety precautions
- Stability
see Fire resistance ratings, **Structure**
- Stadiums
see Communal non-residential
- Staircase
see Stairways
- Stairs
see Stairways
- Stairs and ladders..... **C/AS1** 3.1.4, 3.4.1 a), 3.4.7, 3.9.14, 3.15.9, Figures 3.6, 3.10 and 3.21
 curved and spiral stairs **C/AS1** 3.3.5, 3.4.7 a) b)
 external stairways **C/AS1** 3.14.6 c), 3.14.7, 3.15.4, 3.15.7, Figures 3.22 and 3.23
 stairways **C/AS1** 3.3.3, 3.3.4, 3.3.6 b), 3.4.5, 3.11.8, 3.12.3, 3.15.6, 5.8.2 c),
 6.9.3, 6.9.10, 7.5.7
- Stairways..... **NZBC/D1.3.2 (f) to (i), D1.3.4 (g) (h); D1/AS1** 4.0
see also **Access Routes**, accessible routes and ladders
 accessible stairs..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.7, 4.1.8 b), 4.2.1,
 6.0.1 to 6.0.4, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8
 common stairs **D1/AS1** 4.1.8, 4.2.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 to 8
 curved stairs..... **D1/AS1** 4.1.3, 4.4, Figure 17
 landings **D1/AS1** 4.3, 4.3.1, 4.3.6 c), 4.6.2 c), Figures 14 and 25
 direction changes **D1/AS1** Figure 16
 length..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.4, 4.3.6 c)
 maximum rise..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.2, Table 7
 obstructions..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.5, Figure 15
 width..... **D1/AS1** 4.3.3
 lighting..... **D1/AS1** 4.6, 4.6.2, Table 8
 pitch..... **D1/AS1** 4.1, Figure 11, Table 6
 pitch lines **D1/AS1** 4.1.3, 4.4.1, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, 4.5.2

- private stairs **D1/AS1** 4.6.2, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8
 main **D1/AS1** Figure 11, Table 6
 minor **D1/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
 risers **D1/AS1** 4.1, 4.1.2, 4.1.3, 4.1.8, 4.4.2, 4.5.1, Figures 11 and 12, Table 6
 secondary **D1/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 11, Table 6
 service stairs **D1/AS1** 4.5.1, Figure 11, Tables 6 and 8
 slip resistance **D1/AS1** 4.1.4 c), Table 2
 spiral stairs **D1/AS1** 4.1.3, 4.4.1
 treads **D1/AS1** 4.1, 4.1.2 to 4.1.7, 4.5.1, 4.6, Figures 11 to 13, Table 6
 tapered treads **D1/AS1** 4.4, Figure 17
 visibility **D1/AS1** 4.3.6, 4.6, Table 8; **G8/AS1** 1.0.3
 width **D1/AS1** 4.2, 4.2.1, 4.4.1, 4.5.2, 4.5.3, 6.0.1
 winders **D1/AS1** 4.5, Figure 18
- Standard test
 see Test methods
- Steel
 see Design, steel
- Storage water heaters **NZBC/H1.3.4**; **G12/AS1** 6.2, 6.3.1, 6.6.3, 6.6.5, 6.7.2, 6.6.4, 6.8 to 6.11, Table 5; **H1/AS1** 5.0
 see also Water heaters
 drain pipes **G12/AS1** 6.11.3 c)
 open vented **G12/AS1** 6.3.2, Figures 6 and 7
 free outlet type **G12/AS1** 6.1.2, 6.4.2
 mains pressure supply **G12/AS1** 6.2.1, Figure 8, Table 5
 tank supply **G12/AS1** 6.1.1, Figure 6, Table 5
 safe trays **G12/AS1** 5.2.3, 6.11.3
 seismic restraint **G12/AS1** 6.11.5, Figure 4
 unvented
 see Storage water heaters, valve vented
 valve vented **G12/AS1** 6.3 to 6.7, Figure 8
- Storage water tanks
 see Tanks
- Strainers (filters) **G12/AS1** 6.2.3
- Structural fire endurance rating (S)
 see Fire resistance ratings
- Structural integrity
 see **Structure, Structural Stability During Fire**
- Structural Stability During Fire**
 consequential collapse **NZBC/C4.3.3**
 fire hazards **NZBC/C4.3.1**
 fire intensity **NZBC/C4.3.1**
 fire load **NZBC/C4.3.1**
 fire resistance **NZBC/C4.3.1, C4.3.2, C4.3.3**
- Structural stability
 see Fire resistance ratings
- Structure** **B1**
 building instability **NZBC/B1.1**
 collapse **NZBC/B1.2**
 damage **NZBC/B1.2**
 deflections **NZBC/B1.2**
 demolition **NZBC/B1.3.6**
 design
 concrete **B1/VM1** 3.0
 drains
 see Drains
 foundations
 see Foundations
 loadings **B1/VM1** 2.0
 earthquake **B1/AS3** 1.9, Table 2
 limit state **B1/VM1** 2.2.4, 7.1

Amend 11
 Sep 2010

Amend 11
 Sep 2010

Structure (continued)

	masonry.....	B1/VM1 4.0, B1/AS1 2.0, B1/AS3 1.3.3
	siteworks.....	B1/VM1 10.0
	steel.....	B1/VM1 5.0
	strength reduction factor.....	B1/VM4 2.0.1, 3.5.1, 4.7, Tables 1 and 4
	timber.....	B1/VM1 6.0, B1/AS1 3.0
	<i>see also</i> Timber barriers	
	windows	
	<i>see</i> Windows	
	failure.....	NZBC/B1.1
	limit states	
	serviceability limit state.....	NZBC/B1.3.1 , B1.3.2 , B1.3.5
	ultimate limit state.....	NZBC/B1.3.1 , B1.3.2 , B1.3.5
	loads.....	NZBC/B1.2 , B1.3.3
	creep.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	cyclic loads.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	differential movement.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	dynamic loads.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	earth pressure.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	earthquake.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	seismic resistance of building services.....	B1/VM1 14.0
	explosion.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	liquid.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	shrinkage.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	snow.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	wind.....	NZBC/B1.3.3
	sitework.....	NZBC/B1.3.6 , B1.3.7
	stability.....	NZBC/B1.3.6 , B2.3.1 ; D1/AS1 1.6
	tanks.....	G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
	seismic restraint.....	G14/VM1 2.3.2
	temporary support.....	NZBC/B1.3.5
	vibrations.....	NZBC/B1.2
	Stucco.....	B1/AS1 5.0, E2/AS1 9.3
	bottom of stucco.....	E2/AS1 9.3.8, Figure 75
Amend 12 Oct 2011	finishes.....	E2/AS1 9.3.7
	installation.....	E2/AS1 9.3.4
	general.....	E2/AS1 9.3.4.1
	movement control joints.....	E2/AS1 9.3.4.2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	limitations.....	E2/AS1 9.3.1, Figure 74
	non-rigid plaster backings.....	E2/AS1 9.3.5
	installation of wall underlays.....	E2/AS1 9.3.5.1, Table 23
Amend 12 Oct 2011	rigid plaster backings.....	E2/AS1 9.3.6
	fibre cement sheet backing.....	E2/AS1 9.3.6.2
	plywood backing.....	E2/AS1 9.3.6.1
	parapets and enclosed balustrades.....	E2/AS1 9.3.9
Amend 12 Oct 2011	structure.....	E2/AS1 9.3.2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	stucco cladding system.....	E2/AS1 9.3.3, Tables 23 and 24, Figure 74
	windows and doors.....	E2/AS1 9.3.10, Figure 76
	Subsidence.....	B1/VM4 A1.2.1 (a)
	Suites	
	<i>see</i> Firecells	
	Surface finishes.....	C/AS1 6.1.2 e), 6.20, Tables 6.2 and 6.3
	ceilings.....	C/AS1 6.20.3, 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a)
	exceptions.....	C/AS1 6.20.4
	exterior surfaces.....	C/AS1 7.1.2 c), 7.8.6, 7.11
	flooring and floor coverings.....	C/AS1 6.20.8 to 6.20.10, 6.20.14, C2.1
	wharehenui.....	C/AS1 3.3.2 h), 3.4.2 e), Table 2.2

Surface Water	E1
<i>see also</i> Run-off, drains	
2% probability storm	
{50 year return period}	NZBC/E1.3.1
10% probability storm	
{10 year return period}	NZBC/E1.3.2
drainage systems	NZBC/E1.3.3
Suspended flexible fabrics	C/AS1 6.20.1, 6.20.16 to 6.20.19, C3.1, Table 6.2
Swimming pools	
<i>see</i> Safety from Falling	

T

Tanks		
Amend 11 Sep 2010	industrial liquid waste	G14/VM1 1.4.1 b), 1.4.2, 3.0
	seismic restraint	G14/VM1 3.2.1
	water tanks	G12/AS1 5.2, 6.2.1
	access	G12/AS1 5.2.5, Figure 4
	covers	G12/AS1 5.2.4
	location	G12/AS1 5.2.1
	overflow pipes	G12/AS1 5.2.2, Figure 4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	safe trays	G12/AS1 5.2.3, Figure 4
	seismic restraint	G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
	structural support	G12/AS1 5.2.7, Figure 4
	water storage tanks	G12/AS1 5.1
Taverns		
	<i>see</i> Communal non-residential	
Temperature		
	<i>see</i> Electricity, Energy Efficiency, Interior Environment, Outbreak of Fire, Piped Services, Solid Waste, Structure, load, Water Supplies	
Temperature control		
	<i>see</i> Interior Environment , interior temperature	
Temperature/pressure relief valves		G12/AS1 6.4.1, Figure 8, Table 6
	installation	G12/AS1 6.6.5
	relief valve drains	G12/AS1 6.7, Figures 12 and 13
Test methods		C/AS1 Appendix C
	fire properties of external wall cladding systems	C/AS1 C8.1
	fire resistance	C/AS1 C6.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	fire resisting closures	C/AS1 C7.1
	flame barriers	C/AS1 C9.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	flammability of floor coverings	C/AS1 C2.1
	flammability of membrane structures	C/AS1 C3.1
	flammability of suspended flexible fabrics	C/AS1 C3.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	non-combustibility of materials	C/AS1 C5.1
	properties of lining materials	C/AS1 C4.1
Theatres		NZBC/G5.3.5
	<i>see also</i> Communal non-residential	
Thermal break		E3/AS1 1.1.4 d)
Thermal resistance (R-value)		E3/AS1 1.1; H1/VM1 1.4, H1/AS1 2.1.1, 2.2, 2.3
	alternative solution	E3/AS1 1.1.5
	materials and installation	E3/AS1 1.1.3
Thermostats		G12/AS1 6.3.1, 6.5.1
Thresholds		D1/AS1 1.3.2
Timber		B2/AS1 3.2
	<i>see also</i> Design, timber, Timber weatherboards	

Amend 12 Oct 2011	Timber barriers.....	B1/AS2 1.0
	<i>see also</i> Barriers and Safety from Falling	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Timber weatherboards.....	E2/AS1 9.4
	finishes	E2/AS1 9.4.9
	horizontal weatherboards	E2/AS1 9.4.1.3, 9.4.4
	external corners.....	E2/AS1 9.4.4.4, Figures 77 and 78
	fixings	E2/AS1 9.4.4.3, Table 24
	horizontal laps.....	E2/AS1 9.4.4.1
	internal corners.....	E2/AS1 9.4.4.5, Figure 79
	joints	E2/AS1 9.4.4.2
Amend 12 Oct 2011	installation	E2/AS1 9.4.3, Table 23
	fixings	E2/AS1 9.4.3.1, Tables 20 and 24
	limitations	E2/AS1 9.4.1
	horizontal weatherboards.....	E2/AS1 9.4.1.3, Table 3
	vertical weatherboards.....	E2/AS1 9.4.1.2, Table 3
	weatherboard profiles	E2/AS1 9.4.1.1
	materials	E2/AS1 9.4.2, Table 23
Amend 12 Oct 2011	parapets and enclosed balustrades	E2/AS1 9.4.8
	vertical weatherboards	E2/AS1 9.4.1.2, 9.4.5
	corners (external and internal)	E2/AS1 9.4.5.3, Table 7, Figures 79 and 80
	fixings	E2/AS1 9.4.5.2, Table 24
	laps	E2/AS1 9.4.5.1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	windows and doors in cavity walls	E2/AS1 9.4.7, Figures 17C, 85 and 86
	windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards	E2/AS1 9.4.6, Figures 17D, 81-84
	Time-share accommodation <i>see</i> Communal residential	
	Toilets <i>see</i> Personal Hygiene , WC Pans	
	Toxic substances <i>see</i> Hazardous Substances and Processes , Class 6	
	Transport terminals <i>see</i> Commercial buildings	
	Travel distance	NZBC/C2.3.1 (d) , C2.3.2 , C3.3.1 (a)
	Tunnels <i>see</i> Ancillary buildings	
	Turnstiles <i>see</i> Doors	

U

- Ultimate limit states
 see **Structure**, limit states
- Universities
 see Communal non-residential
- Unprotected areas **C/AS1** 3.14.3, 3.14.6, 5.1.1 b), 7.1.2 d), 7.3, 7.4.1 a),
 7.4.2, 7.5.2 to 7.5.6, 7.5.8, 7.6.4, 7.7.1, 7.7.3, 7.7.5,
 Step 2 and Step 3, 7.8.9, 7.8.10 c), 7.9.10, 7.9.11,
 7.9.13, Figures 7.3 to 7.5, Tables 7.2 to 7.4
- fire resisting glazing (Type B)..... **C/AS1** 5.8.2 a), 7.4.1 a),
 7.4.2 to 7.4.4, Figure 7.4, Table 7.1
- small openings (Type A)..... **C/AS1** 7.4.1 a), 7.4.2, 7.4.4, Figure 7.4
- uPVC pipe..... **G13/AS3** 1.0
- Urinals **E3/AS1** 3.3, 3.3.6; **G1/AS1** 2.3, 6.1.1, Table 1; **G13/AS1** Table 2
- bowl urinals **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, 2.3.3, 2.3.5
- continuous wall urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, Figure 3
- discharge system **G1/AS1** 2.3.2
- flushing systems **G1/AS1** 2.3.5 to 2.3.8, Table 5
- manually operated..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.8
- stall urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1, 2.3.5
- surface finishes..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.4
- trough urinals..... **G1/AS1** 2.3.1 to 2.3.3
- Utensil washing..... **G3/AS1** 1.1.1

V

	Vacuum relief valves	G12/AS1 Table 6
	Vehicles	NZBC/D1.1, D1.2.2, D1.3.1 (d) (e), D1.3.5, G14.3.2 (b); D1/AS1 10.0, G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5; G15/AS1 3.0.10
Amend 11 Sep 2010	access	G14/VM1 1.8, 2.1.5
	car parking areas	D1/AS1 10.1
	accessible car parking spaces	D1/AS1 10.1, 10.2.1
	commercial vehicles	D1/AS1 11.0.2
	loading spaces	D1/AS1 11.0.2
	Vent pipes	G12/AS1 6.3.2, 6.8; G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 12, Table 5; G13/AS2 Figures 5 and 6
	diameter	G12/AS1 6.8.2, G13/AS1 Table 6
	fixture vent pipes	G13/AS1 5.2, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11, Tables 5 and 6
	gradient	G13/AS1 5.4
	height	G12/AS1 6.8.2 d)
	installation	G12/AS1 6.9.1; G13/AS1 5.5 to 5.7, Figures 5 to 8, 10 and 11
	insulation	G12/AS1 6.8.3
	relief vent pipes	G13/AS1 5.6, Figure 7
	termination	G12/AS1 6.8.2 c); G13/AS1 5.7.3, Figure 12
	Ventilation	G4; NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); C/AS1 6.9.6; E3/AS1 1.0.1, 1.2;
Amend 11 Sep 2010	airflow control	NZBC/H1.3.1 (b); H1/AS1 3.0, G4/AS1 1.5.1 b)
	air handling systems	G4/AS1 1.3.1 b)
	air purity	NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/VM1 2.0
	bacteria, pathogens and allergens	NZBC/G4.3.2
	balconies, bridges and open stairways	C/AS1 3.14.7
	car park	G4/AS1 1.5.4
	combined natural and mechanical	G4/AS1 1.4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	contaminated air	
	discharge systems	G4/AS1 1.5.1 f)
	disposal	NZBC/G4.3.4
	removal	NZBC/G4.3.3
	cross-ventilation for car parking	C/AS1 6.10.4, 6.10.6
Amend 11 Sep 2010	drains	G13/AS2 4.0, Figures 4 to 6, Table 3
	extract ventilation	G4/AS1 1.5.1 c)
	fixed combustion appliances	NZBC/G4.3.5
	flues	G4/AS1 2.3, 2.4
	gas burning appliances	C/AS1 9.2.2
	gas-fuel appliances	G4/AS1 2.0
	another solution	G4/AS1 3.0
	draught diverters	G4/AS1 2.3.2
	flue construction	G4/AS1 2.3
	flue location on dwellings	G4/AS1 2.4
Amend 11 Sep 2010	mechanical ventilation	G4/AS1 2.2
	natural ventilation	G4/AS1 2.1
	maximum occupancy	NZBC/G4.2
	mechanical ventilation systems	NZBC/C3.3.7, G4.3.2; G4/AS1 1.5, 2.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	natural	G4/AS1 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 2.1
	household units and accommodation units with one external wall	G4/AS1 1.3
	natural smoke ventilation	
	see Fire safety precautions	
	number of air changes	NZBC/G4.3.1
	oil fired appliances	C/AS1 9.3.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	outdoor air supply	NZBC/G4.3.1; G4/AS1 1.5.1 a) d)
	passive stack ventilators	G4/AS1 1.3.7
	positive and negative pressure	G4/AS1 1.5.5
	prevention of internal moisture	NZBC/E3.3.1
Amend 11 Sep 2010	rate	G4/VM1 1.0.1
	recirculated air systems	G4/AS1 1.5.1 e)
	safe paths	C/AS1 6.9.6 to 6.9.10
	solid fuel appliances	C/AS1 9.1.2
Amend 11 Sep 2010	trickle ventilators	G4/AS1 1.3.9
	ventilation rate	G4/VM1 1.0

Vermin-proofing	E2/AS1 9.1.8.3
Vibrations	
see Structure	
Visibility in Escape Routes	F6/AS1
duration	F6/AS1 1.6
documentation	F6/AS1 1.7
equipment	F6/AS1 1.8
illuminance	F6/AS1 1.3
installation	F6/AS1 1.8
location	F6/AS1 1.2
maintenance	F6/AS1 1.8
method of measurement	F6/AS1 1.4
modifications to AS 2293.1: 2005 and AS 2293.3: 2005.....	F6/AS1 Appendix B
modifications to NZS 6104.....	F6/AS1 Appendix C
light output	F6/AS1 1.5
scope	F6/AS1 1.1
start-up	F6/AS1 1.5

Amend 11
Sep 2010

W

Walls.....	NZBC/B2.3.1 (a), C3.3.1, C3.3.5, E2.3.2, E2.3.3, E3.3.4, E3.3.5, G6.3.1; C/AS1 5.3.1, 5.7.2, 6.10.6, 6.12.1, 6.12.6, 6.16.2, 6.18.5 c), 6.20.3, 6.20.4 d) f), 6.20.5, 6.20.6, 6.20.11, 6.20.15 a), 7.8.9, 7.9.5, 7.9.18, Table 6.2;
cavities and concealed spaces	C/AS1 6.18.4, Figures 6.11 and 6.12
curtain walls	C/AS1 6.18.4, 7.9.14, Figure 6.11
external walls	NZBC/E2.3.2
see also Unprotected areas	
floor/wall junctions.....	G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 5
internal/external wall junctions.....	G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 4
surface finishes.....	NZBC/C3.3.1
theatre proscenium walls.....	C/AS1 6.3.1, 6.3.2 f), 6.19.9, 6.19.10, 6.19.11, Figure 6.13
wall assemblies.....	G6/AS1 1.0.3, Figure 2
Wall/Roof junctions	
see Roof/wall junctions	
Wall claddings	E2/AS1 3.3, 9.0
air seals.....	E2/AS1 9.1.6, Figure 81
barriers to airflow	E2/AS1 9.1.4, Table 23
bottom of cladding	E2/AS1 9.1.3, Tables 7 and 18, Figure 65
concrete slabs	E2/AS1 9.1.3.1, Figure 65
concrete ground slabs (except masonry veneer)	E2/AS1 9.1.3.3, Table 18
garages and openings to garages	E2/AS1 9.1.3.4, Tables 18 and 23, Figure 65
masonry veneer clearances	E2/AS1 9.1.3.2, Table 18, Figure 73D
timber floor framing	E2/AS1 9.1.3.5, Table 18
drained cavities	E2/AS1 9.1.8
cavity battens	E2/AS1 9.1.8.4
limitations	E2/AS1 9.1.8.1
requirements	E2/AS1 9.1.8.2, Table 23, Figures 66 and 67
vermin-proofing	E2/AS1 9.1.8.3, Figure 66
wall framing behind cavities.....	E2/AS1 9.1.8.5
general.....	E2/AS1 9.1
limitations.....	E2/AS1 9.1.1, Table 3
maintenance	E2/AS1 9.1.2
penetrations	E2/AS1 9.1.9
inter-storey junctions.....	E2/AS1 9.1.9.4, Figure 70
other cavity penetrations	E2/AS1 9.1.9.2
penetrations through cavities.....	E2/AS1 9.1.9.1
pipes and service penetrations.....	E2/AS1 9.1.9.3, Figures 68 and 69
wall underlay	E2/AS1 9.1.7, Tables 3 and 23
wall underlays to wall openings.....	E2/AS1 9.1.5, Figures 72A and 72B

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Amend 12
Oct 2011

Amend 12
Oct 2011

- Wall claddings (continued)
- windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.1.10
 - Amend 12 | attachments **E2/AS1** 9.10.8
 - Oct 2011 | closed cell foam tape **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.7
 - Amend 12 | head flashings **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71
 - Oct 2011 | scope **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.1
 - treatment of opening **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B, 116, Tables 7 and 20
 - window and door heads **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
 - Amend 12 | window and door jambs **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.6
 - Oct 2011 | window sills **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D
- Warehouses
see Industrial buildings
- Warning Systems** **F7**
see also Alarm systems
combined fire detection and warning system **NZBC/F7.3**
- Wash-down areas **G3/AS1** 2.3
- Washing machines
see Sanitary appliances
- Waste chutes
see **Solid Waste**
- Waste disposal units **NZBC/G15.3.3; G13/AS1** Figure 2, Table 2
- Waste pipes
see Discharge pipes, Pipes
- Water
see **External Moisture, Foul Water, Internal Moisture, Surface Water, Water Supplies**
- Water heaters **G12/AS1** 6.1, Table 5
installation **G12/AS1** 6.11
instantaneous water heaters **G12/AS1** 6.1.1,
solar water heaters **G12/AS1** 6.1.1, 6.15, Table 5
storage water heaters
see Storage water heaters
wet back water heaters **G12/AS1** 6.13, Figure 15
- Water main **G12/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1
- Water seals **G1/AS1** 2.1.1 c), Figure 2; **G13/AS1** 1.0.3, 3.2.1, Figure 1, Table 1,
G13/AS2 3.3.1 d)
- Water splash **E3/AS1** 3.0
basins **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
baths **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
lining materials **E3/AS1** 3.1, Figure 1
joints in linings **E3/AS1** 3.2, Figure 2
showers **E3/AS1** 3.3.1 to 3.3.5, Figures 4 and 5
sinks **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
tubs **E3/AS1** 3.2.2, Figure 3
urinals **E3/AS1** 3.3.6
- Water Supplies** **G12**
access for maintenance **NZBC/G12.3.6 (d)**
backflow prevention devices **NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)**
cold **G3/AS1** 1.1.4
drinking water **NZBC/G12.2**
energy efficiency **NZBC/H1.2, H1.3.4**
hot **G3/AS1** 1.1.4, Figure 1; **G12/AS1** 6.0
mixing devices
tempering valves **G12/AS1** 6.14.2, Figure 16
pipe sizes **G12/AS1** 6.12, Table 4
safe water temperatures **G12/AS1** 6.14
isolation of system **NZBC/G12.3.6 (e)**
leakage **NZBC/G12.3.6 (c)**
laundries **G2/AS1** 1.1.1, 1.1.2
mains **G12/AS1** 3.1.1, 3.2.1 b), 5.1.1

Amend 11
Sep 2010

	non-potable water	NZBC/G12.3.2; G12/AS1 4.1
	outlet identification.....	G12/AS1 4.2.1, Figure 3
	people with disabilities	NZBC/G12.3.9
Amend 11 Sep 2010	potable water	NZBC/G12.3.1, G12.3.6 (a), G14.3.2 (c); G12/AS1 3.0; G14/VM1 1.6.3
	pressure vessels	NZBC/G12.1 (b), G12.3.7 (a)
	sanitary appliances.....	NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
	sanitary fixtures.....	NZBC/G12.2, G12.3.3, G12.3.4 G12.3.5, G12.3.6 (b)
	solid waste areas.....	G15/AS1 3.0.7, 4.0.3
	water storage vessels.....	NZBC/G12.3.7, G12.3.8
	<i>see also</i> Storage water heaters	
	water temperature	NZBC/G12.1 (b) (c), G12.3.3 to G12.3.5, G12.3.7 (b), G12.3.8
	Water supply systems	G12/VM1 1.0, G12/AS1 5.0
	installation	G12/AS1 5.2
	anchor points.....	G12/AS1 7.1.2
	electrochemical compatibility	G12/AS1 7.1.1
	in concrete or masonry	G12/AS1 7.3.3
	pipe supports.....	G12/AS1 7.1
	spacing	G12/AS1 7.1.3, Table 7
	pipes below ground	G12/AS1 7.3.2
	protection from damage.....	G12/AS1 7.3
	protection from freezing.....	G12/AS1 7.2
	protection from frosts	G12/AS1 3.6.3
	maintenance facilities	G12/AS1 5.2
	materials.....	G12/AS1 2.0, Table 1
	pressure limitations.....	G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
	temperature limitations	G12/AS1 2.2.2 a)
	pipe size.....	G12/AS1 5.3, Table 4
	flow rates.....	G12/AS1 5.3.1, Table 3
	watertightness	G12/AS1 7.5
	Water tanks	
	<i>see</i> Tanks	
	Water traps	G13/AS1 3.0, Figure 1
	dimensions.....	G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figure 1
	location.....	G13/AS1 3.3
	multiple outlets	G13/AS1 3.3.2, Figure 2
	WC pans.....	G1/AS1 2.1, 3.1.1, 4.2.2, Figures 4 to 6, Table 1; G13/AS1 3.2.1, Figures 1 and 6, Tables 2 and 5,
	cisterns	G1/AS1 2.2.2
	cubicles	G1/AS1 6.2, Figure 11
	flushing systems	G1/AS1 2.1.1 f), 2.2, 4.2.6
	surface finish.....	G1/AS1 2.1.1 a)
	water seals	G1/AS1 2.1.1 c), Figure 2
	Weather stops.....	D1/AS1 1.3.2
	Weatherboards	
	<i>see</i> Timber weatherboards and fibre cement weatherboards	
Amend 12 Oct 2011	Weathertightness	E2/AS1 2.1, 8.1.1
	Weathertightness risk factors	E2/AS1 3.0
Amend 12 Oct 2011	establishing the risk	E2/AS1 3.1, Figure 1
	building envelope risk scores.....	Table 2
	examples	E2/AS1 3.4, 3.4.1, 3.4.2, 3.4.3, Tables 4-6, Figures 2-4
	definitions of risk.....	E2/AS1 3.1.1, Table 1
Amend 12 Oct 2011	risk score	E2/AS1 3.1.2, Table 2
	wall claddings.....	E2/AS1 3.3, Table 3
	Whare Runanga	
Amend 11 Sep 2010	<i>see</i> Communal non-residential, assembly service	

- Wheelchairs **D1/AS1** 7.0.1
see also People with disabilities, Accessible routes
spaces for wheelchairs **D1/AS1** 8.1, 8.1.2, Figure 30
wheelchair access **NZBC/D1.3.4 (b) (d) (e)**
- Wind
see **Structure**, loads
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 |
- Amend 11
Sep 2010 |
- Windows and doors **B1/VM1** 12.0; **C/AS1** 3.1.4, 6.20.4 c); **E2/AS1** 9.1.10, 9.2.10, 9.3.10,
9.5.4, 9.6.8.6, 9.6.9.7, 9.7.6, 9.8.8, 9.9.9; **E3/AS1** 1.3.1;
G7/AS1 1.0.1 to 1.0.3, 2.0.1,
Figures 1 and 2; **G15/AS1** 3.0.4, 3.0.6
- see also* **Natural Light**
closed cell foam tape **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.7
fire windows
see Glazing
glazing **B1/AS1** 7.0
head flashings **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.4, Table 7, Figures 66 and 71
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 |
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 |
- scope **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.1
treatment of opening **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.2, Figures 72A, 72B and 116, Tables 7 and 20
used for escape **C/AS1** 3.3.6 d), 3.18, 6.20.6 b), Figure 3.32
vertical profile: windows and doors **E2/AS1** 9.6.8.6, Figures 95 and 100
window and door heads **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.3, Figure 71
windows and doors in cavity walls **E2/AS1** 9.4.7, 9.5.4.2, 9.8.8.2, 9.9.9,
Figures 85, 86, 91, 116 and 128
windows and doors in direct fixed weatherboards **E2/AS1** 9.4.6, 9.5.4.1, 9.8.8.1,
9.9.9, Figures 81-84,
90, 115 and 127
- Amend 12
Oct 2011 |
- window and door jambs **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.6, Table 7
window and door sills **E2/AS1** 9.1.10.5, Figures 17C and 17D
- Work camps **NZBC/G2.2, G3.2.1, G3.3.1 (a) to (d);**
G2/AS1 Table 1; **G3/AS1** 1.0.1
see also Communal residential, community service